Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills





Learn and practise English vocabulary

Oxford Word Skills



OXFORD

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0x2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008 2012 2011 2010 2009 2008 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

ISBN: 978 0 19 462000 0

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Alamy Images pp 55 (airplane/Mint Photography), 65 (leg of lamb/Jeff Morgan, tuna steak/Maximillian Weinzlerl), 67 (raw peas/foodfolio, cooked peas/Paul Bradforth), 72 (grilled fish/Images of Birmingham), 140 (TV/Tony Cordoza, radio/Mark Bolton Photography, Mini/Natonal Motor Museum)

Cephas Picture Library p 65 (squid/Tim Hill)

Corbis pp 16 (blooming trees/Bloomimage, beach in summer/ Randy Faris, winter/image100), 38 (couple/Tim Pannell), 72 (fried eggs/J. Riou), 72 (roast chicken/David Thomas/PictureArts), 140 (ocar red carpet/Chris Pizzello/Reuters, Olympic flag/Duomo), 164 (broken pencil/Jose Luis Pelaez/Blend Images)

Epson p 55 (printer)

Getty Images pp 37 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 39 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 50 (tights/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 96 (bazaar/Scott R. Barbour/Image Bank), 133 (orchestra/Oliver Benn/Stone, Vanessa Mae/George Chin/Wirelmage), 159 (two girls in library/John Cumming/Iconica)

Lebrecht Music & Arts Photo Library p 133 (Sir Simon Rattle/ Wladimir Polak, Cecilia Bartoli/Laurie Lewis, Yo Yo Ma/T. Martinot)

Mark Mason Studios pp 10, 12 (cover card)

Music Pictures p 132 (Arctic Monkeys/Rob Verhost/Redferns)

OUP pp 11 (pencil/Photodisc), 50 (Hemera), 52 (clothes shopping), 65 (ham slices/Hemera), 66 (tin/Hemera), 69 (wine bottle, can/Hemera), 82 (young man/Image Source), 86 (bell/Hemera), 103 (soap, toothbrush, electric razor, hairbrush, comb, tissues, perfume/Hemera), 111 (young man/Image Source), 112 (young man/Image Source), 127 (young man/Image Source), 140 (newspapers, Journal), 153 (handshake/Hemera)

Photolibrary.com p 16 (autumn/Mark Barrett/Index Stock Imagery)

Pierre d'Alancaisez pp 55 (wine bottle), 65 (bacon, sausages, salmon steak, tuna steak, prawns, fillet steak, pork chop, salmon fillet, bacon), 67 (frozen peas), 69 (juice carton, biscuits and rice, jars, tin, chocolates and matches), 103 (toothpaste, shampoo, razor, make-up)

Punchstock pp 72 (boiled rice/Digital Vision), 131 (woman shooting/Photodisc)

Press Association p 140 (Iraq demonstration/Dima Gavrysh/ Associated Press)

Ronald Grant Archive p135 (Rumor Has It poster/Warner Bros. Pictures)

StockFood pp65 (crab/Peter Rees, mussels/Eisling, chicken/ Foodcollection); 72 (rare steak/Eisling, well done steak/ Foodcollection)

Illustrations by Stephane Gamain/NB Illustration, Willie Ryan/ Illustration, Oxford Designers and Illustrators

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

Contents

Acl	knowledgements	7
Inti	8	
St	arter unit	
Hor	w to use a unit	10
Hov	w to learn new words	11
Ho	w to do the exercises	12
Abl	previations and symbols	13
Ba	asic English	
1	I can understand and say numbers	14
2	I can tell the time	15
3	I can say days and dates	16
4	I can say countries and nationalities	18
5	I can use classroom vocabulary	20
6	I can use English language words	21
7	I can ask and answer questions about language	22
	Review	23
Pe	ople	
8	I can give personal information	26
9	I can fill in a form	27
10	I can talk about my family	28
11	I can describe physical actions	30
12	I can name parts of the body	32
13	I can describe people	33
14	I can talk about character	36
15	I can describe relationships	38
16	I can say how I feel	40
	Review	42

Everyday life

17	I can describe my routine	46
18	I can talk about clothes	49
19	I can buy clothes	51
20	I can talk about money	54
21	I can talk about the weather	56
22	I can talk about illness	58
23	I can get help at the chemist's	60
	Review	61
Fo	ood and drink	
24	I can name meat and fish	65
25	I can name fruit and vegetables	66
26	I can buy food in a shop	68
27	I can order in a café	71
28	I can order in a restaurant	72
	Review	75
Ge	etting around	
29	I can get around on buses	78
30	I can get around on trains	80
31	I can ask for and give directions	82
32	I can talk about roads and traffic	84
33	I can understand signs and notices	86
	Review	87
Pla	aces	
34	I can talk about my country	90
35	I can talk about my town	91
36	I can describe the countryside	94
37	I can talk about shops	96
38	I can talk about my home	98
39	I can describe a kitchen	100
40	I can describe a bedroom and bathroom	102
41	I can describe a living room	104
	Review	105

Study and work

42	I can talk about my school	109
43	A CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT OF	112
44	I can name jobs	114
45	I can describe a job	116
46	I can talk about using a computer	118
47	I can use email and the internet	120
	Review	122
Н	obbies and interests	
48	I can say what I like	126
49		128
50	I can talk about my free time	130
51		132
52	I can talk about films	134
53	I can talk about the media	136
	Review	138
Н	olidays	
54	I can arrange a holiday	141
55	I can book a hotel room	142
56	I can communicate in an airport	144
57	I can describe a beach holiday	146
58	I can describe a sightseeing holiday	147
59	I can use the bank and post office	148
	Review	150
So	cial English	
60	I can meet and greet people	153
61	I can use special greetings	155
62	I can ask for information	156
63	I can ask for things	158
64	I can invite people	160
65	I can make suggestions	161
66	I can offer, accept, and refuse	162
67	I can say sorry and respond	164

68	I can express my opinion	165
69	I can use the phone	166
	Review	168
La	nguage	
70	I can use common adjectives	172
71	I can use common adverbs	174
72	l can use irregular verbs	176
73	I can use phrasal verbs	178
74	I can use prepositions of time	180
75	I can use time words and phrases	181
76	I can use prepositions of place and movement	183
77	I can use link words (1)	186
78	I can use link words (2)	188
79	I can use 'have' and 'have got'	190
80	I can use 'get'	192
	Review	193
Voc	cabulary building tables	199
Cor	nmon irregular verbs	202
An	swer key	203
An	swer key to review units	225
List	of spotlight boxes	235
Wo	ord list/Index	237

Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain English Centre, Valencia, Spain Tti School of English, London, UK Bell International, London, UK Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK

Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
Funda Bolat (Turkey)
Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
László Rézműves (Hungary)
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman (UK)
Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™ which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See *How to learn new words* in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

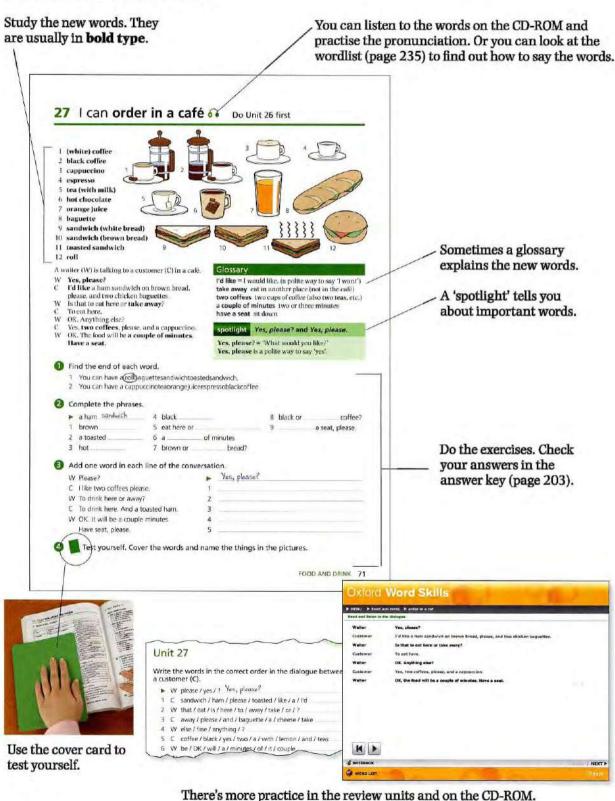
- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can
 use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

Starter

A How to use a unit



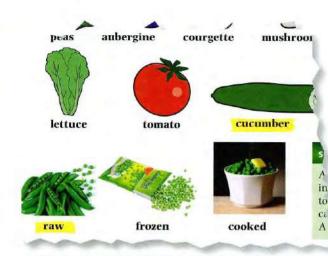
B How to learn new words



Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.



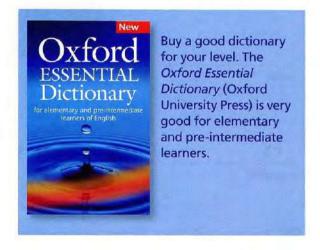
- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- · Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.
- You can do the exercises in the review units. or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/ wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.



Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.



· Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.



toma carr

A sa

C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

Word	Meaning				
tick	/				
underline	word				
cross out	-word				
circle	(word)				
complete	word on I like chocolate ic	e Cream.			
right	$^{\circ}2 + 2 = 4^{\circ}$ is right .				
wrong	$^{\circ}2 + 2 = 5^{\circ}$ is wrong.				
mistake	If something is a mistake , it' e.g. Inglish (The 'T' is a mistak				
correct	Make something right. e.g. Inglish (wrong) English (rig	ght)			
true	e.g. London is in England. That	t's true.			
false	e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's fal	se. It's in France.			
the same	e.g. Small and little are the sa	ame. (small = little)			
different	e.g. Big and small are differe	ent. (They're not the same.)			
match	Find something that you can put with another thing. e.g. 1 I'm fromb a music 2 I can speak b Japan 3 I like c English				
missing	If something is missing , it is not there. e.g. He comes New York. The word from is missing . (He comes from New York.)				
cover	Put one thing over another thing.				
table	This is a table :				
	Word	Meaning			
	tick	1			
	radorino	7AZC~d			
column	The table has two columns : for 'meanings'.	a column for 'words' and a column			



Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?

D Abbreviations and symbols

- opposite. Old is the opposite of young.
- synonym: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. small = little SYN
- informal. If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or INF people you know very well. The opposite is formal. If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know very well, or in written English.
- You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them etc.
- e.g. for example: Fruit, e.g. apples and bananas.
- u uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can't be used with a or an.
- past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb) PT
- past participle PP

Vowels

i:	see	/siː/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
I	sit	/sɪt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
a:	father	/'fa:ðə(r)/
D	got	/got/
o:	saw	/so:/
σ	put	/pot/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
Λ	cup	/knp/
3:	bird	/bs:d/
Э	about	/əˈbaut/
er	say	/seɪ/
ခပ	go	/gəʊ/
aı	five	/faɪv/
aυ	now	/nao/
OI .	boy	/Icd/
เอ	near	/n10(r)/
eə	hair	/heə(r)/
ບວ	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/got/
tſ	cheap	/tʃiːp/
d3	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fɔ:1/
V	verb	/va:b/
θ	thin	/0:n/
ð	this	/ðis/
S	so	/səu/
z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
S	shoe	/fuː/
3	television	/'telivizn, teli'vizn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
1	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
w	wet	/wet/

1 I can understand and say numbers 6

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	101	a/one hundred and one
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	140	a/one hundred and forty
3	three	13	thirteen	30	thirty	200	two hundred NOT two hundreds
4	four	14	fourteen	40	forty	1,000	a/one thousand
5	five	15	fifteen	50	fifty	1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
6	six	16	sixteen	60	sixty	1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty
7	seven	17	seventeen	70	seventy	2,000	two thousand
8	eight	18	eighteen	80	eighty	100,000	a/one hundred thousand
9	nine	19	nineteen	90	ninety	1,000,000	a/one million
10	ten	20	twenty	100	a/one hundred	2,000,000	two million NOT two millions

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

0	Co	orrect the mistakes.			spotlight	about				
	-	thirty one thirty-one								
	1	two hundreds		About means 'a bit more or a little less than'. How many students are there? \sim About 20. (= 18, 19, 20, 21 or 22)						
	2	three hundred forty								
	3	twenty two	The second secon	it? ~ It's about £100.						
	4	42500								
	5	one thousand and two hundred								
	6	two thousand three hundred fifty	i manusura m	orentania de la constanta de l	Farakteniki i inderende i Anuala					
2	w	rite the middle number in word	ds.							
	-	24 twenty-five	26	5	118	120				
	1	7	9	6	243	245				
	2	19	21	7	999	1,001				
·	3	66	68	8	5,055	5,057				
	4	49	51	9	11,300	11,302				
3	w	Write the number in words using about.								
	•	sixty-eight people about seventy people								
	1									
	2									
	3									
	4									
	5									
	6									
	7									
	8	nine hundred and eighty thousand								

Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.

A Telling the time 60

What's the time? What time is it?

1			
1	1 700 0		
F 4	1 It's to	ur oʻc	lock.
1 .	It's fo		AU CAK

It's five past six.

It's quarter past four It's four fifteen.

It's twenty past six. It's six twenty.

It's half past four. It's four thirty.

It's twenty to seven. It's six forty.

It's quarter to five. t's four forty-five.

It's three minutes to seven. It's six fifty-seven.

Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six NOT threepast six.

Write the times in words.

-	3.10 three ten
1	9.15
	10.25
3	3.35
4	11.45
5	3.45
	7.20
7	2.30
8	4.40

Write the times in words. Use past and to.

•	12.30 half past twelve
1	7.15
	9.30
3	11.35
4	3.50
5	8.25
	1.03
7	2.45
8	4.17

Test yourself. Look at the clocks. Cover the words and say the times.

Giving more information 6

9 a.m. nine o'clock in the morning

12.00 p.m.

5 p.m. five o'clock in the afternoon

7 p.m. seven o'clock in the evening

7.57 nearly/almost eight o'clock

8.02 just after eight

11.30 p.m. eleven thirty at night

12.00 a.m. midnight

Same or different? Write 5 or D.

	8.45 p.m.	8.45 in the evening	5
•	3.00 p.m.	nearly 3.00	D
1	12.00 at night	midnight	
2	4.00 a.m.	4.00 in the afternoon	
3	6.32	nearly 6.30	
4	11.45 p.m.	11.45 at night	
5	8.43	nearly quarter to nine	
6	2.17	quarter past two	
7	12.03 p.m.	just after midday	
8	3.00 a.m.	three o'clock	

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

When do banks open in your country?

Do they close at midday?

What time do shops close?

What time do bars open?

What time do they close?

When do post offices open and close?

3 I can say days and dates Do Unit 1 first

A Days, months, and seasons 60

days of the week	Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday
months of the year	January February March April May June July August September October November December
seasons (in Britain)	spring (March – May) summer (June – August) autumn (September – November) winter (December – February)
special days	Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)



Winter

spotlight Capital letters Days and months have a capital letter. Monday NOT monday January NOT january

-	
w	Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.

	1	1 Wednesday Saturday Monday 1 Friday	Tuesday Sunday Thursday
	2	2 autumn spring winter summer	
	3	3 December March June February No April July September May August	
2)	W	Write the next day, month or season.	
	•	May June 5 Friday	taking the company of
	•	M - 1	1
	1	1 Monday 7 Janua	ry
	2	- Decomposition in the Composition of the Compositi	nn
	3	3 spring 9 Wedr	esday
	4	4 November 10 July	
3)	Al	ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your ans	swers or ask another student.
	1	1 Which month is your hirthday?	

- 2 Which season do you like best? Why?
- 3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why?
- 4 What do you do on New Year's Day?
- 5 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they?
- Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.

B Ordinal numbers and dates 60

1 st first 2 nd second 3 rd third 4 th fourth	6 th sixth 7 th seventh 8 th eighth 9 th ninth	11 th eleventh 12 th twelfth 13 th thirteenth 14 th fourteenth	16 th sixteenth 17 th seventeenth 18 th eighteenth	21st twenty-first 22nd twenty-second 23rd twenty-third 30th thirtieth
5 th fifth	10th tenth	15 th fifteenth	20th twentieth	31st thirty-first

Complete the words.

	ni <u>n</u> th	5	eigth
1	th_rd	6	si_teenth
2	twent_eth	7	fo_rteenth
3	fi_th	8	th_rteenth
4	f_rst	9	s_cond

6 Look at the calendar. Answer the questions. Write the dates as we say them.

spotlight Saying and writing dates

We can write the date like this:

10 March or 10th March or 3.10.08 or 3/10/08 We say the date like this:

What's the date today? ~ It's March the tenth. ~ It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:

1980 nineteen eighty 1995 nineteen ninety-five 2006 two thousand and six 2020 twenty twenty

Ma	rch						Apı	ril					
S	М	T	W	Т	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	: 29	30					

When's ...

- ▶ the first Saturday in March? March the third. or The third of March.
- 1 the second Tuesday in April?
- 2 the second Wednesday in April?
- 3 the first Sunday in March?
- 4 the first Friday in April?
- 5 the third Tuesday in April?
- 6 the fifth Saturday in March?
- 7 the third Wednesday in March?
- 8 the fourth Monday in April?

Write the dates or years as we say them.

▶ 6.9 The sixth of September. OR September the sixth.

	3,2
2	4.7
3	10.12
4	12.8
5	15.1
-	1000

21.5	

3	30.11
9	22.4

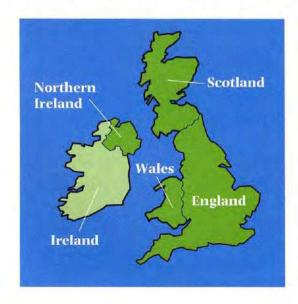
3	22.4		
10	2015	-	

• -	
11	Today's date
12	The date next Tuesday

4 I can say countries and nationalities 6

I com	[I'm (I speak)	
Area in the world	Country	Nationality (Language)
Europe	The Czech Republic	Czech
	France	French
	Germany	German
	Greece	Greek
	Hungary	Hungarian
	Italy	Italian
	Poland	Polish
	Portugal	Portuguese
	Russia	Russian
	Spain	Spanish
	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian
	Turkey	Turkish
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)
Asia/The Far East	China	Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)
	Japan	Japanese
	South Korea	Korean
	Thailand	Thai
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)
	The United States	American (English)
Central America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)
South America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)
The Middle East	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)
Africa	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)
Australasia	Australia	Australian (English)

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan Not japan.



spotlight People from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

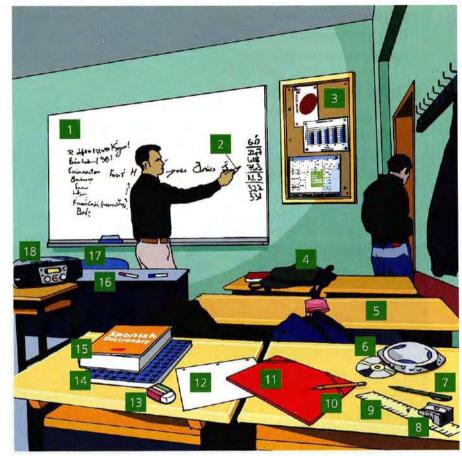
(Great) Britain = England, Wales, and Scotland

The United Kingdom/The UK = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.

	ue or false? Write				
•	Argentinians speak	Spanish	5	Australians speak Australian	
1	Saudis speak Arabic	• *************************************	6	The Chinese speak Chinese	
2	Mexicans speak Spa	nish.	7	Brazilians speak Portuguese.	
3	Thais speak Japanes	e	8	Americans speak English.	
4	Hungarians speak H		9	Czechs speak Polish.	
Co	omplete the senter	nces.			
-	China is in The Far_	East	5	Argentina is in	Arr
1	Scotland is in Great		6	Egypt is in	
2	Hungary is in		7	Saudi Arabia is in	
3		America.	8	India is in	
4	Thailand is in The	East	. 9	Australia is in	
		Les A	7		
	4/3				
	E ngland	English	6	The C	
▶ 1	E ngland F.	English	6 7	The C.	
1 2	F	English	6 7 8	The C,	
1 2 3	F. G.	-,	6 7 8 9	The C ,	
-	F			The C ,	
3	F	,	9	The C,,,,,,,	
3 4 5	F		9 10 11	The C	
3 4 5 Co	F		9 10 11	The C	
3 4 5 Co	F		9 10 11 nding in	The C , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	

5 I can use classroom vocabulary 6.

- 1 board
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 bag
- 5 desk
- 6 CD player and CD
- 7 pen
- 8 pencil sharpener
- 9 ruler
- 10 pencil
- 11 folder
- 12 piece of paper
- 13 rubber
- 14 notebook
- 15 dictionary
- 16 table
- 17 chair
- 18 cassette player



	▶ pen ✓	3 chair	Put a cross (X) by the t 7 dictionary	11 table
	▶ board 🗶	4 rubber	8 ruler	12 pencil sharpener
	1 desk	5 board pen	9 noticeboard	
	2 piece of paper	6 CD 🗌	10 pencil	
2	Add another word to	make a longer wor	d or phrase.	OLIGIP -
	▶ notebook	3 notice	6	CD
	1 board	4 pencil		
	2 cassette	5 piece of		

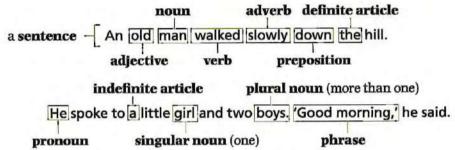
► I've got a dictionary.
► I haven't got a cassette player.

ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

6 I can use English language words 6





- There are eight words in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- · Walk is a regular verb; the past simple is walked.
- Speak is an irregular verb. The past simple is spoke, and the past participle is spoken. (The past
 participle is used to form the present perfect.)
- Circle the correct answer.
 - A and the are adjectives articles.
 - 1 A and an are definite/indefinite articles.
 - 2 Woman is a noun/sentence.
 - 3 Up is a preposition/pronoun.
 - 4 Speak is a regular/an irregular verb.
- 5 Spoken is the past simple/past participle of speak.
- 6 Books is singular/plural.
- 7 Go and do are verbs/past simple forms.
- 8 Slowly and quickly are adverbs/phrases.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have three English lessons every week.	a verb have 1 a pronoun	2	a plural noun
There's a young man	3 an adjective	5	an indefinite article
from Rome in the class.	4 a preposition	6	a definite article
Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.	7 an adverb 8 an irregular past simple	9	a regular past simple
I think he's in the wrong class.	10 a singular noun	11	a sentence

7 I can ask and answer questions about language 60



Question	Answer I don't know. = It's a new word for me. OR It means 'terrible'.			
What does 'dreadful' mean? (NOT What means 'dreadful'?)				
What's this called in English?	I can't remember. = I knew the word yesterday, but I don't know it today. OR It's a stamp.			
How do you say 'pasaporte' in English?	Passport.			
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT Could you explain me?)	Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.			
What's the difference between 'hello' and 'hi'?	The meaning is the same, but 'hi' is informal.			
What's the opposite of 'large'?	Small.			
How do you pronounce 'May'?	/meɪ/, like 'day'.			
'Eight' is pronounced /art/. Is that right? OR Is that correct?	No, that's wrong. or That's not right. It's pronounced /ert/.			
How do you spell 'apple'?	I'm not sure. Is it one 'p' or two? or A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)			

Match 1-6 with a-q.

- ▶ How do you spell your name? ______
- 1 How do you say 'cup' in German? _____
- 2 What's the opposite of 'closed'? ____ c
- 3 What does 'tiny' mean? _____
- 4 How do you pronounce 'tiny'? _____
- 5 Could you explain 'How are you?' ____ f I don't know.
- 6 'Question' and 'answer' mean the same. g Open. Is that right? _____

- It means 'very small'.
- b It's what you say when you meet a friend.
- D-E-double N-I-S. <
- d /tami/
- e No, it's wrong.

Complete the guestions.

- What does 'awful' mean ? ~ 'Terrible' or 'dreadful'.
- 1 What's this ______ in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
- 2 How do you ______'tomato'? ~ /təm'axtəv/.
- 3 ______ you spell 'eye'? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
- 4 What's the difference _______ 'bye' and 'goodbye'? ~ 'Bye' is more informal.
- 5 'Pen' is the same as 'pencil'. Is that ______ ? ~ No, that's wrong.
- 6 What's the ______ of 'interesting'? ~ Boring.
- 7 What ______ 'enormous' mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
- 8 Could you ______ 'EXIT'? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.

Review: Basic English

Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the answer in words.

- ten plus (+) seven = seventeen
- ▶ eight minus (-) three = five
- 1 three plus nine =
- 2 four plus eleven = _____
- 3 nineteen minus six =
- 4 five plus twenty-nine =
- 5 sixteen minus five =

- 6 eighty-seven minus eight = _____
- 7 ninety-five plus seventeen =
- 8 thirty-five minus eight = _____
- 9 a hundred and five plus seventy =
- 10 three hundred minus fourteen =
- 11 twenty-eight plus thirteen =
- 12 one thousand minus forty-seven =

Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time. Write the new times with past or to.

five past eleven half past six	twenty-five past five twenty past two	ten to eight ✓ midnight twenty to two five to nine	
► 07:50 ten to eight	+15 five past eight	4 02:20	+15
1 [3:40]	+15	5 [20:55]	+15
2 12:00	+15	6 05:30	+15
3 23:05	+15	7 [1:25]	+15

Unit 3

1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A What's the _____today?
 - B The fifth _____October.
- 2 A I don't like January.
 - B Why?
 - A Because it's the coldest ______ of the _____
- 3 A Which _____ do you like best?
 - B Summer.
- 4 A It's my _____today.
 - B Really? How old are you?
- 5 A I'm going to California on New _____
 - B Fantastic!

Write the answers.	
► What's the 1st day of the week? Monday	
1 What's the 3rd month of the year?	
2 What's the 3rd season of the year in Britain?	
3 What's the 4th day of the week?	
4 What's the 5th month of the year?	
5 What's the 6th day of the week?	
6 What's the 7th month of the year?	
7 What's the 9th month of the year?	
8 What's the 11th month of the year?	
Unit 4	
1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, cou	ntries and nationalities
begin with capital letters. Then write C for 'country	
► Saudi N 5 hina	
▶ <u>Dritain</u> 6 <u>zech</u>	12rench
	13ermany
2ungary 8panish 3exico 9razil	14ussia
4wiss 10urkey	15rgentinian 16ortugal
7VI33	16ortugal
2 Complete the text.	
My name's Magda, and I'm studying ▶ English in Lone	don at the memory Very from De (1)
and I live with two students: Silvia, who's Br	and Irina who's from the Cz
Re(3). Irina speaks Cz(4) and Po	(5) We go to a language school in the
centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two Ja	(6) students, a Ko (7)
three Tu(8) women, a young It(9) girl,	, a Ch(10) boy and four students
from Sp (11). Our teacher is Dennis, and he's Au.	(12).
Unit 5	
NACCO	
Write your answers.	
► You put your things in this. a bag	
1 The teacher writes on this in the classroom.	
2 You use this if you make a mistake.	
3 You put notices on this.	
4 You find the meaning of words in this.	
5 You sharpen pencils with this.	
6 You write new vocabulary in this.	
7 You listen to CDs on this	
9 You sit at one of these or	
10 You can put pieces of paper in this.	
10 100 can put pieces of paper III tills.	

Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

1	S	P	A	5	Т	S	1	М	P	L	E
٧	5	T	Α	R	T	1	C	L	E	W	P
D	E	U	P	S	1	N	G	U	L	Α	R
1	N	G	R	E	G	U	L	Α	R	D	Е
R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	J	P
R	E	1	N	T	R	0	S	E	K	Ε	0
E	N	L	0	A	D	G	T	P	D	C	S
G	C	L	U	K	E	R	U	L	E	T	1
U	E	D	Ν	U	W	E	M	U	-1	1	T
L	Y	Α	D	V	E	R	В	R	M	٧	1
Α	R	0	F	0	P	Н	R	A	5	E	0
R	U	W		R	D	C	0	L	R	P	N

	Walked, went, saw past simple
1	I come from France.
2	Quickly, slowly
3	In, from, on
4	Good afternoon, at school
5	Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed)

7	He, I, they
8	Table, go, very
9	Different, old, big
10	Boy (not boys)
11	Do (did), go (went)
12	Girls (not girl)

Unit 7

6 A, an, the

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

•	What does terrible mean? It means very bad or dreadful.
1	What's the opposite of correct?
2	What's the difference between spelling and pronunciation?
3	How do you say hello in your language?
4	How do you pronounce explain?
5	What does wrong mean?
6	Tiny means the same as enormous. Is that right?



What's this called in English?



How do you spell

8 I can give personal information 6

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information. RECEPTIONIST SANDRO spotlight information What's your family name? ~ Bertoli. And your first name? ~ Sandro. Information means facts about people or things, e.g. name, Could I have your address? ~ 45 Alfred Road. address, etc. Information is And the postcode? ~ CB2 4TX. uncountable; don't say Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family. an information or informations. So, Sandro, where are you from? ~ Italy. (or Where do you come from?) Whereabouts in Italy? ~ Pisa. (or Where in Italy exactly?) What do you do in Pisa? ~ I'm a doctor. (or What's your job?) And are you married or single? ~ I'm married. Have you got any children? ~ Yes. A boy and a girl. How old are they? ~ The boy's six and the girl's two. In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it. Are married you? Are you married? 1 What do do you in your country? 2 Where do come from you? 3 Could I your address have? 4 What's your name family? 5 What's postcode your? 6 How are old your children? 7 Have you any children got? 8 What's your name first? Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.) ► I need some information ABOUT YOU 1 What's your _____ name? ~ Kovács. 2 And your _____ name? ~ Zsuzsa. 3 Where are you _____? ~ Hungary. 4 _____? ~ The capital, Budapest. And ______ I have your address? ~ Tarcali utca 27. 6 And the _____? ~ 1113. 7 And what _____ you do? ~ I'm an engineer. 8 Are you _____? ~ No, I'm still single.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.

~ I'm 27.

9 How _____ are you?

9 I can fill in a form 6

Meaning	Word	Example	ABOUT YOU
single or married man married woman single woman single or married woman	Mr Mrs Miss Ms	Miss	
family name	surname	Rodriguez	
first name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena	
day, month, and year you were born	date of birth	12 June 1985	
	nationality	Argentinian	
first language	mother tongue	Spanish	
	home address	California 2000, Piso 12 Buenos Aires C1289AAN	
phone number during the day	daytime tel	[54] 11 4302 8000	
no means 'number'	mobile no	0341 241248	
NOT email number	email address	malena@latinoa.com.ar	
married or single?	marital status	single	
job	occupation	sports teacher	
elementary? intermediate? etc. tick = ✓	level of English (please tick)	elementary 🗸 intermediate advanced	elementary intermediate advanced
your written name	signature	Maria Rodriguez	

True or false? Write T or F.

- ► Miss = married or single woman ___F
- 1 occupation = married or single ____
- 2 Mrs = married woman
- 3 Mr = single or married man _____
- 4 surname = first name
- 5 tick = **/** _____
- 6 forename = family name _____

- 7 level = write your name
- 8 marital status = married or single
- 9 mother tongue = mother's name
- 10 email address = where you live
- 11 date of birth = today's date
- 12 daytime tel = phone number during the day
- ABOUT YOU Write your information in the table above.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

10 I can talk about my family

A Family tree 60





Damon's grandmother

his grandfather



Dave his father



Elsie

Maggie his mother



his uncle



lane his aunt



Luke his brother





his sister





James his cousin

Iessica his cousin

All the people here are Damon's relatives. Luke is Dave and Maggie's son. Karen is Dave and Maggie's daughter. Maggie is Dave's wife. Dave is Maggie's husband. Elsie and Alf are Maggie's parents (= mother and father). Dave is Paul's brother-in-law. Jane is Maggie's sister-in-law. James is Maggie's nephew. Karen is Paul's niece. Luke is Elsie's grandson. Jessica is Elsie's granddaughter.

- Complete the sentences about Damon's family.
 - Paul is Elsie and Alf's SOn.
 - 1 Maggie is Elsie's
 - 2 Luke is Paul's 3 Jessica is Maggie's
 - 4 Maggie is Jane's _____
 - 5 Karen is Jessica's

- 6 Paul is Jane's 7 Elsie is Jessica's
- 8 Paul is Luke's
- 9 Maggie is Jessica's _____
- 10 James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon's

Complete the table.

	MALE	FEMALE
•	father	mother
1	brother	
2	husband	
3	nephew	
4	relative	
5	son	

	MALE	FEMALE
6	brother-in-law	Account of the second of the s
7	grandfather	
8	grandson	-
9	cousin	
10	parent	
11	uncle	



Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.

B Family history 60

My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother. Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so there are five of us in my family. Luke's got a girlfriend, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.



spotlight How old are you?

Damon is 22 (years old). NOT He has 22 (years). His brother is older than him. He's 23. His sister is younger than him. She's 20. Alf's the oldest in the family. Karen's the youngest in the family.

Use the practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

Glossary

get married become husband and wife (get divorced stop being husband and wife) be born start your life have got have there are five of us NOT we are five girlfriend/boyfriend see picture below mum INF mother dad INF father spend time with someone be with someone and do things with them

together with each other



True or false? Write T or F	5	True	or f	false?	Write	T	or	F.
-----------------------------	---	------	------	--------	-------	---	----	----

- Damon is Luke's older brother. 1 Damon's parents are divorced.
- 2 Damon was born after Luke.
- 3 Luke is younger than Karen.
- 4 Luke and Sue live together.
- 5 Luke's mum has two sons.
- 6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend.
- 7 There are four in Damon's family.
- 8 Karen is the youngest in the family. 9 Damon and Karen are often together.

Write the words in correct sentences.

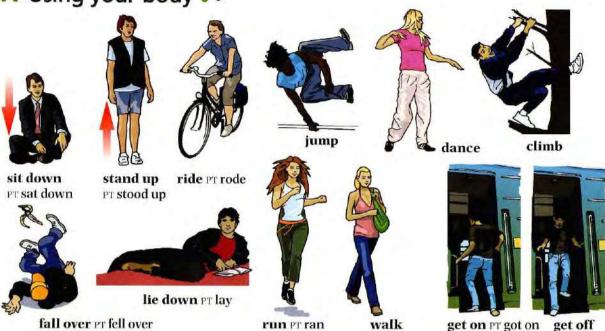
- his/divorced/are/parents His parents are divorced.
- born / I / 1989 / in / was
- 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a
- 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is _____
- 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us
- 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am _____
- brother / younger / 've got / sister / an / older / and / a / I

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 How many people are there in your family?
- 2 When were you born? ____
- Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?
- 4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with?
- Do you all live together?

11 I can describe physical actions

A Using your body 60



spotlight Irregular verbs

The verbs **sit**, **stand**, **run**, **fall**, **ride**, **lie** and **get** are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding **ed**. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

0	Write the	present form	of the verbs
	******	present form	OI LIIC VCID.

-	walked walk	3	rode	6	got on
1	lay down	4	climbed		
2	fell over	5	sat down	8	stood up

Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6 – 9.

-	1 sat do	own at my desk and worked for two hours.
		up when the teacher comes into the classroom.
2	I often	to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
3	I want to	Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
4	Do you often	when you go to nightclubs?
5	The doctor asked me to	down on the bed.
6	The boys	into the swimming pool.
7	She	her bike to school this morning.
8	I was late, so I	to the bus stop, but I over.
9	She	off the bus, went into the station and a train.

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.

B Using your hands 60



-					
Λ	Make	words	from	tha	letters.
	INIGKE	WUIUS	HOIII	uie	letters.

-	ivge give	7	kipc pu
	rrcay		kabre
2	nurt fof	9	dloh
3	tpu wond		uphs
	seloc		thsu .
5	thuco	12	pnoe
6	pord		

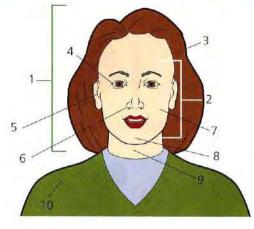
Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.

	shut a dictionary	4	pull your hair touch your hair
-	give someone five dictionaries 2	5	turn off a radio hold a radio
1	touch a bicycle push a bicycle	6	drop a ruler break a ruler
2	pick up a TV turn on a TV	7	carry a door close a door
3	break a bottle open a bottle		pick up a baby hold a baby

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.

12 I can name parts of the body 6.

- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 hair
- 4 eve
- 5 ear
- 6 nose
- 7 cheek
- 8 chin 9 neck
- 10 shoulder



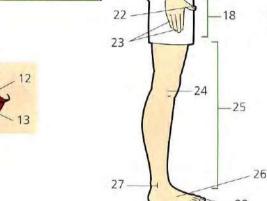
- 14 chest
- 15 stomach
- 16 waist
- 17 wrist
- 18 hand 19 back
- 20 arm
- 21 bottom
- 22 thumb 23 fingers
- 24 knee
- 25 leg

- 16

- 26 foot
 - (plural feet)
- 27 ankle 28 toes

- 11 mouth
- 12 lip
- 13 tooth (plural teeth)





19-

20

21

True or false? Write T or F.

I've got two ...

- eves _____ necks ___
- 1 noses _____ 2 lips
- 3 ears _____
- 4 waists _____
- 5 knees _____
- 6 shoulders
- 7 backs _____ 8 thumbs _____
- hands
- 10 wrists _____
- 11 ankles _____
- heads _____ 13 arms

14 mouths _____

- Which one is different? Circle it.
 - ▶ finger thumb (waist) hand
 - 1 foot wrist toe ankle
 - 2 arm hand wrist stomach
 - 3 neck ears nose lips

- 4 cheeks finger chin hair
- 5 mouth teeth lips shoulder
- 6 eyes legs knees ankle
- 7 shoulder chest neck bottom

- Complete the words.
 - ▶ hair

- 4 t____h
- 6 f___e
- 7 n ___ e

- 8 b____m
- 9 wa t

2 s____h

1 c___n

3 c ____ t

- - 5 b___k

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.

13 I can describe people

A General description 60



True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you are *overweight*, you aren't *slim*. ______
- 1 Average height means not tall and not short. _____
- 2 Attractive and good-looking mean the same. _____
- 3 You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful.
- 4 If someone is fat, they are overweight.
- 5 The answer to 'How much does he weigh?' is '200 cms'.
- 6 'How tall are you?' is correct.
- 7 It is polite to call someone fat and ugly.
- 8 Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive.

spotlight thin, fat, ugly

- Thin means slim, but slim is more positive.
- It isn't polite to tell someone they are **fat**. It is more polite to say they are **overweight**.
- The opposite of beautiful/ good-looking is ugly, but it isn't polite to tell someone they're ugly.

Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in italics in your answer.

- Is he attractive? ~ Yes, he's good-looking

 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average ______.

 Are the two brothers attractive? ~ Yes, they're both ______.

 Is she guite thin? ~ Yes, she's very ______.
- 5 Is he overweight? ~ Yes, he's a bit _____
- 6 Is she very attractive? ~ Yes, she's
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

B Hair and eyes 👀

	How long?	What colour?	What kind?	
	short	blonde	straight	
She's got	medium-length	light brown dark brown	curly C	hair
	long	grey	wavy	
		brown eyes 💿		
		green eyes		
He's got		blue eyes (
	a beard	a moustache	(n)	

- 4 Cross out the adjective you don't need.
 - She's got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She's got long, dark brown, black hair.)
 - 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
 - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
 - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
 - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
 - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- 6 Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

		ABOUT YOU
•	Is your hair brown? Is it dark brown or light brown?	No, it's blonde.
1	Is your hair long, m, or s?	
2	What colour is it: bl, bl, br, or g?	
3	Is your hair st, w, or c?	
4	Have you got a b or a m?	
5	Have you got br eyes?	

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

I've got long, dark hair and...

C How old are they? 60

Age	Word/phrase		
→ 18 months; before they can walk	a baby		
2 → 10 or 11	a child plural children		
13 → about 17	a teenager or a young person plural young people		
18 →	an adult		
about 45 → 60	a middle-aged person		
65→	an elderly man or woman (more polite than old)		

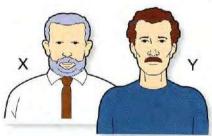
spotlight		Other phrases for age		
in	his her	teens (13 → about 17)		
in	my his her	early twenties $(20 \rightarrow 23)$ mid-thirties $(34 \rightarrow 36)$ late fifties $(57 \rightarrow 59)$		

				Vancous Vancous Vancous			
	Match	1	_ 8	with	2	_	i
W	IVICALCII			AAICII	u		٠.

•	me (45)	a	elderly
1	my wife (38)	b	in her late thirties
2	my son (6 months)	c	a teenager
3	my daughter (7)	d	in my mid-forties V
4	my brother (47)	e	a baby
5	my nephew (14)	f	in her early sixties
6	my aunt (63)	g	an adult
7	my father (79)	h	middle-aged
8	my niece (21)	i	a child

- ABOUT YOU Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.
 - a baby <u>Marcus (my sister's son)</u>
 1 a young person ______
 2 a middle-aged person _____
 3 someone in his/her twenties ______
 - 4 an elderly woman _____
 - 5 an elderly man
 - 6 a baby _____
 - wenties _____ 7 someone in his/her fifties _____
- Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the 'age' column and say the words and phrases.
- Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.



W	Write a description	of the other	man. Use the	text above to	help vou.

TI 11 .	and the state of the
the other man is	

I can talk about character

A What's he/she like? 60

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	The students in my class are all really friendly ; it's great.	happy to meet and talk to other people orp unfriendly
kind	He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really kind .	warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people
nice	I met Colin on holiday and he's a really nice guy.	kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) syn pleasant opp horrible
fun	I love Karen; she's great fun .	something or someone that makes you happy
funny	John makes me laugh – he's just a really funny man.	making you laugh
relaxed	My parents are very relaxed : they don't get angry if I'm late.	calm
clever	Tom is very clever – the best student in our class.	able to learn and understand very quickly syn intelligent opp stupid
quiet	She's quiet, but she can be funny.	someone who is quiet doesn't say very much
serious	I like our teacher but she's very serious.	someone who is serious thinks a lot and doesn't laugh very much

0	Complete	the	words.
	compice.	-	WOI US.

	f <u>u</u> n	4 ne	
1	f y	5 dr	
2	q t	6 f	.)
3	rlyd	7 la h	Ť

spotlight What's ... like?

We use this question to find out more about someone or something.

What's Jack like? ~ He's very nice. NOT He's like very nice.

What was the film like? ~ Great!

Answer the questions.

What's... ▶ a synonym for nice? pleasant 1 the opposite of friendly? 2 a synonym for clever? 3 the opposite of nice? ____ 4 the opposite of clever? ____

What do you call someone who...

- likes meeting and talking to people? friendly
- 5 makes you laugh?
- 6 thinks a lot and doesn't laugh a lot?
- 7 is usually calm?
- 8 always wants to help others? ____

Complete the conversations.

1	What's Alex <u>like</u> ? ~ He's nice, but he's very He doesn't laugh much.
2	
	much. But her father doesn't like people very much – he's really
3	was your grandmother like? ~ She was very – she always helped
	everyone. And she was too. She went to university.

B We like each other 60

each other



Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she's like that. What's interesting is that we're complete opposites. She's very happy to meet new people, but I'm really shy; she's very sociable, I'm quiet; she's sporty, and I'm not. But it wasn't important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I'm very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie's not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she's a great cook and a really nice person."

3 usually tidy or untidy? ____

Glossary

on my own alone or without other people be complete opposites be very different shy If you're shy, you can't talk easily to people you don't know.

sociable friendly and liking to talk to people sporty liking sport and good at it

share a flat live in the same flat as another person

organized An organized person plans things well.

tidy A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP untidy

lazy A lazy person doesn't like working. opp hardworking

spotlight really

6 a very organized person?

Really is important in spoken English. It means 'very' and you can use it before most adjectives.

I'm in a **really** nice class. She was **really** horrible to me.

4	really kind				
5	Read the text again. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F. Sophie likes sport.				
	1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie.	Listen to the CD-ROM and			
	2 Gemma and Sophie are very different				
	3 Sophie likes meeting new people.				
	4 They lived together at university.				
	5 Gemma's sociable.				
	6 Sophie's very unfriendly.				
	7 Sophie's untidy				
	8 Gemma doesn't plan things.				
6	ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask	another student.			
	What are you like? Are you				
	1 sporty or not sporty?	4 lazy or hardworking?			
	2 a very relaxed person?	5 quiet or very sociable?			

15 I can describe relationships

A Romantic relationships 🚱

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've been together for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend**'s house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **split up** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.



Glossary

partner someone you have a romantic relationship with
(your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)
be together be in a romantic relationship
go out with someone have a romantic relationship with someone
ex-boyfriend a person who was your boyfriend in the past
(also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband)
get to know someone learn about and become friends with someone
get married become husband and wife
have a baby become a new mother/father
couple two people, often in a romantic relationship
split up stop having a romantic relationship

spotlight relationship

You have a **relationship** with someone. It can be good or bad.

I have a good **relationship** with my flatmate.

He has a difficult **relationship**

with his father.
We often talk about romantic

We often talk about romantic relationships with wives, boyfriends, etc.

1	Write the	words in	correct	sentences.
W		*********		. Jeileellees.

divorced married in the past but not now

	get/to/they/married/want hey want to get married.
1	baby / last / had / a / year / they
2	split up / January / they / in
3	have / good / a / very / relationship / we
4	you / how / her / get to know / did / ?
5	three / together / for / they / years / were
6	with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out

2 Complete the sentences.

	They <u>nave</u> a very good relationship.
1	When did they a baby?
2	My boyfriend and I have been for two months.
3	I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely
4	She went with him last year, but they split in January.
5	Sonia is his girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
6	My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're My father has a new, but I don't think they're going to married.

B Friends 6



WHY WE LIKE

each other

Sophie: "I get on very well with Gemma - she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first met at university. and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice - and she always gives me good advice. We don't see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend."

Glossary

get on (well) with someone have a good relationship with someone

meet PT met see and speak to someone for the first time

become flatmates start to be flatmates (also become friends)

flatmate person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

advice an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.)

see someone talk to or visit someone know someone be friends with someone or have met them

closest friend most important friend (also best friend)

spotlight each other

Pam and Mike really loved each other. (Pam loved Mike, and Mike loved Pam.) The two girls never listen to each other. (A doesn't listen to B, and B doesn't listen to A.)

Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

	We met last year.	I have known her for a year.	S
1	We live near each other.	We are flatmates.	
2	We don't get on very well.	We have a very good relationship.	
3	I see her every Saturday.	I meet her every Saturday.	
4	She's my best friend.	She's my closest friend.	
5	We became friends.	We stopped being friends.	
6	She gives me advice.	She helps me with my problems.	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1	Who is your closest friend?
2	How long have you known him/her?

3 Where did you meet? __ 4 How did you get to know him/her?

5 How often do you see each other?

6 Why do you get on well with him/her?

16 I can say how I feel

A Physical feelings 60

Word/phrase	Example	Meaning
What's the matter?	What's the matter? ~ Nothing.	What's the problem?
be/feel tired	I feel tired . I'm going to bed.	want to rest or sleep
be/feel hungry	I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?	want something to eat
be/feel thirsty	I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?	want something to drink
be/feel boiling	I'm boiling. Can we open a window?	very, very hot
be/feel freezing	Where's my coat? I'm freezing.	very, very cold
be/feel nervous	Did you feel nervous before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.	
be/feel ill	He felt ill after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.	F 55
not be/feel well	He doesn't feel well , so I told him to go to bed.	

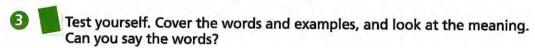
0	How de	o you	feel?	Write	your	answers.
		-			•	

-	You're outside. It's -	10 degrees.	I'm freezing.
---	------------------------	-------------	---------------

- 1 It's the end of a working day.
- 2 It's minutes before an important exam.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours.
- 4 You've had nothing to eat for hours.
- 5 You're working. It's 35 degrees.
- 6 Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees.

Complete the dialogues.

- When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 What's the _____ ? ~ I _____ ill.
- 2 Are you ______? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- 3 What's the ______ ? ~ I'm _____ . I need a coat.
- 4 It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm _____.
- 5 Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit _____
- 6 _____ the matter? ~ I don't feel _____ .



B Emotions 6



1 He's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 He's excited.



4 She's worried.



5 He's angry.



She's frightened. SYN scared



7 He's embarrassed. 8 She's surprised.





9 He's in love.



10 She's upset.

	Con i		154	
sp	ot	0	nt	100

get + adjective

Get can mean 'become' or 'start to be'. My wife gets worried if I'm late. The children **got** very **excited** at the party.

Complete the words.

- ▶ happy
- 1 ang__
- 2 wor____
- 3 up____
- 4 sca ____
- sur _ : _ _ _
- fri ______
- 7 unh ____
- 8 emb_____
- 9 ex_____

Complete the sentences.

- when I heard that her mother was very ill.
- 1 The teacher got ______ because the children were running round the classroom.
- 2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very ______.
- 3 | got very ______ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
- 4 My brothers get very _____ when they're watching football on TV.
- 5 I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very ______.
- 6 My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are _______ because they like him.
- 7 I was very _____ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
- 8 My aunt never travels by plane. She's _____ of flying.
- 9 They met on holiday. I think they're in _____.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

Review: People

Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

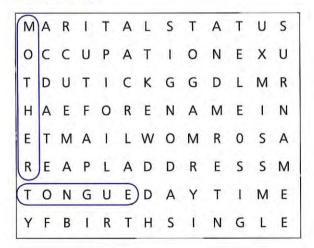
	Helena Costa	
	Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63	
	São Paulo	
	05065 - 002	
	Brazil	
	Art teacher	
	Married; one son, Marco, 7	
Α	Hello there. Now, what's your ▶ family name ?	
В	Costa.	
Α	Right, and your first (1)	?
В	Helena.	
Α	OK, Helena, and where do (2)	
	from?	

Α	Oh, where in Brazil (4)?
В	São Paulo.
Α	Right, and could (5)
	your address?
В	It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo
Α	And the (6)?
В	It's 05065-002.
Α	And what do you (7)?
В	I(8) an art teacher.
Α	Oh, really? And (9)
	married?
В	Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
Α	Oh, (10)
	is he?
В	He's seven.

Unit 9

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across -> .

B I'm (3) _____ Brazil.



Unit 10

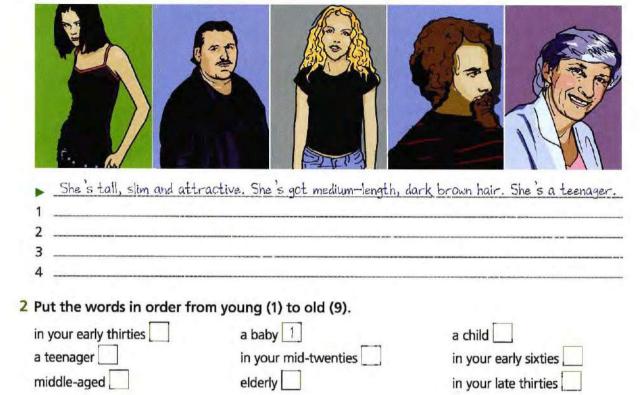
1 Find 13 more family words in the wordsquare.

Α	G	0	R	E	L	Α	Т	1	٧	E	S
G	S	J	0	G	Y	W	E	S	G	T	1
K	1	D	Α	U	G	Н	T	E	R	D	0
0	S	Y	M	E	F	0	T	N	Α	U	M
Α	T	В	X	H	U	S	В			D	1
U	E	R	1	C	U	N	L	1	D	Q	S
N	R	В	R	0	Т	Н	Ε	R	F	U	0
T	1	P	W	U	N	C	L	E	Α	1	N
L	N	0	1	S	T	1	C	Α	T	M	Ŭ
0	L	W	F	1	S	N	E	P	Н	E	W
P	A	R	E	N	T	S	J	0	E	T	1
R	W	U	N	1	E	C	E	E	R	F	Α

correct one mistake in each sentence.	
► He's eighteen years. He's eighteen.	THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY O
1 My brother has eighteen years old.	was the same of th
2 I born in 1990.	West shall him thick to microanism continues.
3 My sister is younger that me.	
4 His parents are divorce.	
5 There are five of we in my family.	
6 She is more old than her brother.	
7 We spend together a lot of time.	
8 Who is the youngest of the family?	Alexander of the state of the s
Unit 11 Complete the table with the verbs in t	he box.
push ✓ walk pick something up drop turn something off run	
Using your hands	Using your feet or legs
push	
Circle the correct word.	
You get on(a bus/a house.	6 You can hold a bag/a classroom.
1 You can open a door/a light.	7 You can break some juice/a pencil.
2 You can touch a park/a wall.	8 You can climb a tree/a bus.
3 You can turn on a radio/a watch.	
A STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE	9 You can close a TV/a book.
4 You can pick up a car/a bicycle.	10 You can sit down on a bed/the sea.
You can ride a car/a bicycle.	
Jnit 12	
STITE 12	
Above or below the waist? Write A (ab	pove) or B (below).
→ foot <u>B</u> 2 ankle 5 s	
head A 3 foot 6 o	thin 9 toes 12 neck
i ears / ie	eg 10 nose 13 mouth
Write another part of the body which	is between the other two. Look at the example.
	fingers 6 eyes mouth
1 hand shoulder 4 ankle	
2 chest head 5 back	
L CITCUL J DACK	manual companies no in sec as an announce ICY

Unit 13

1 Write about the people.



Unit 14

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

Positiv	e Negative	Positive or negative	funny stupid
friendly	unfriendly		quiet clever friendly horrible kind untidy sociable organized serious unfriendly
- I - I - I - I - I - I - I - I - I - I	te the dialogues.		
	ce. ~ Yes, very <u>pleasant</u>		
1 She doe	esn't do any work. ~ No, she's ver	у	

She's nice. ~ Yes, very __pleasant ______.

She doesn't do any work. ~ No, she's very ______.

Does she meet new people easily? ~ No, she's very ______.

Did you live in the same place? ~ Yes, we ______ a flat.

I really like being with her. ~ Yes, she's great _____.

She's clever, isn't she? ~ Yes, very _____.

Were you with other people? ~ No, I was ______.

She makes me laugh. ~ I know, she's very _____.

She plans everything. ~ Yes, she's very _____.

Unit 15

1 Circle the correct word.

Lucy met/knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got/went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got (2) marry/married. They have a very good (3) relation/relationship, and they (4) get/go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got/had a baby girl called Paula. They've been (6) together/each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split (7) off/up, or (8) get/go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple/two.

2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

	become (x2) is (x2) give get (x2)	are √ see
	Are they married?	5 Does your mother you good advice?
1	J CO KITOV SUCK!	6 How did you flatmates?
2	When did you friends with Jana	? 7 Do you on well with your sister?
3	Elena your closest friend?	8 your cousin divorced?
4	Do you your ex-boyfriend often	,

Unit 16

5 It's freezing in this room.

	The To		
1	Correct the spelling mistakes.		
-	He's frightend. frightened	6	I feel tierd.
1	Why are they exited?	7	She's scard of dogs.
2	I'm hangry.	8	Is he nervos?
3	She was very suprised.		What's the mater?
4	I think he was embarassed.		She's thursty.
5	I'm very worrid.		
2	Are these feelings positive or negative? W	rite P	or N.
>	She's very sadN	6	My brother's in love.
1	My daughter's excited about the dog.		He's scared of her.
2	She's really unhappy at the moment.		I was very upset about it.
	He was embarrassed about it.		
4	I don't feel well.		They're all happy

10 They're all happy. _____

17 I can describe my routine

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday) 6.



I usually get up at 7.00.





I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home at 8.00.



I get to work at 8.30.



I finish work at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.15.



I go to bed at 11.30.



I sleep seven hours a night.

spotlight usually and normally

AROUT YOU

I usually/normally go to work by bus means that I go to work by bus most days.

Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

	1	2	3	
-	I get up ✓	work	before breakfast	I get up at 7.30 a.m.
1	l get	at 🗸	at 11 o'clock	
2	I have	seven hours	7.30 a.m. 🗸	
3	I leave	dressed	at 6 p.m.	
4	I finish	home	with my family	
5	I have	dinner	a night	
6	l go	breakfast	at 8.00 a.m	
7	I sleep	to bed	at 8.30 a.m.	

2 Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

		ADOUT 100
	What time do you usually get up in the morning?	I get up at 7.30.
1	Do you dressed before or after breakfast?	M + 14 provinces and the second secon
2	Do you a shower in the morning?	
3	What time do you home in the morning?	
4	What time do you to school/university/work?	MINISTER BLANCH CONTRACTOR OF THE ACTUAL CONTR
5	Who do you dinner with?	. 4
6	What time do you normally to bed?	

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday) 6.

What do you do at the weekend?

During the week I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

Glossarv

at the weekend on Saturday and Sunday during the week from Monday to Friday stay in stay at home once a week one time in every week twice a week two times in every week come round come to my home go out leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc. go shopping go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc. (When you do the shopping you buy food.)

go to the gym

late after the usual time opp early go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself play tennis

Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

the	shopping	go	for	a
do	week _A	or	once	walk
during -	the	twice	a	week
stay	tennis	go	shopping	at
in	play	go	gym	the
come	round	to	the	weekend

Complete the sentences.

	I go to a restaurant Once	or twice a week.	
1	Do you want to	shopping?	
2	. Come	to my flat after work.	
3	l can't	tennis this weekend.	
4	Do you want to go	on Saturday?	
5	the we	ek I usually stay	
6	I'm really tired today because	se I went to bed	last night.
7	What are you doing	the weekend?	
8	I go to the	twice a week because I like to	o exercise.
9	l often	the shopping very	, at 8.00 in the morning.
0	We often go and	a film on Sunday	

Frequency words 60

always often sometimes occasionally hardly ever never OR rarely

These adverbs go before the main verb (e.g. get up), but after an auxiliary verb (e.g. do, does, have, can or be).

I always get up late on Sundays. Do you often go out in the evening? We occasionally go for a walk. I'm hardly ever ill.

spotlight every and all

He goes out every day means 'he goes out on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday'. Be careful!

He works every day means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'. He works all day means 'he works from 9.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.'

Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

	I always go shopping on Saturdays.	I go shopping every Saturday.	S
1	I sometimes work at home.	I often work at home.	
2	She's hardly ever late for work.	She's rarely late for work.	
3	We often finish classes early.	We finish classes early every day.	
4	I never eat meat.	I occasionally eat meat.	
5	She always has a shower in the morning.	She has a shower every morning.	
6	In August we play tennis every day.	In August we play tennis all day.	

Write the sentences using a word from the box.

- 3	every day	always	often 🗸	hardly ever	all day	occasionally	never
•	Hiro goes t	o restauran	ts two or thre	ee times a week	Hiro oft	en goes to rest	aurants.
1	Haruko alw	ays gets up	early.				***************************************
2	Hiro goes t	o the gym o	once a year				
3	Haruko sta	ys in seven i	nights a weel	c	-		
4	Hiro studie	s from 9.00	to 5.00.				
5	Haruko doe	esn't have a	shower in th	e morning.		- 15 ft - 5c - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 1	property in 1980 to 1980 the resident trans
				mes a year.			
	-						

ABOUT YOU True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

•	I hardly ever play tennis. False. I often play tennis.
1	I always have a shower before breakfast.
	I often go out on Friday evening.
	I never listen to music in the evening.
	I rarely study on Sunday.
	I sometimes watch TV at the weekend.
6	I never work in the evening.
	I usually go shopping on Monday.
	I occasionally go to the gym after dinner.

I can talk about clothes

A Clothes 6

- 1 shirt
- 2 top
- 3 jumper syn sweater
- 4 trousers
- 5 ieans
- 6 skirt
- 7 dress
- 8 T-shirt
- 9 jacket
- suit 10
- coat
- 12 raincoat



- Complete the words.
 - ▶ sult
 - 1 j---t
 - 2 t____s
 - 3 j____r
 - 4 c__t

- 5 r____t
- 6 T-___t
- d___s
- j___s
- s____r

spotlight wear

I often wear jeans. She isn't wearing a skirt today. I wore a blue shirt yesterday.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Colours 6



brown











grey





black





pink

dark blue pale blue OR light blue

- Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.

 - ▶ red trousers F
 - 1 a pale blue shirt _____
 - 2 dark blue jeans _____
 - 3 a light blue coat _____
- 4 grey trousers _____
- 5 a black suit _____
- 6 a brown jacket _____
- 7 a pale yellow top _____ 8 a pink raincoat
- 9 a blue skirt ____
- 10 an orange and white T-shirt
- a purple dress _____ 11
- 12 a cream jumper _____
- Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.



One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.

	trousers	trainers	jeans
1	trainers	boots	gloves
2	scarf	umbrella	tie
3	jeans	socks	shoes
4	sandals	glasses	hat
5	glove	watch	hat
6	scarf	belt	jeans

spotlight Plural nouns

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and (sun)glasses are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

These **trousers are** very nice. NOT This trouser is very nice.

My jeans were cheap.

0					0.1
O	Make the	sentences	singular	if	possible.

- ► Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
- ► Her glasses are nice. Not possible.
- 1 Give me the socks.
- 2 Where are my tights?
- 3 I've got two pairs of sandals.
- 4 Do you like my new trousers?
- 5 She's wearing my scarves.....
- 6 Where are my gloves?
- 7 The jeans cost €20.
- 8 I don't like these sunglasses.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 What are you wearing today?
- 2 What clothes do you wear at the weekend?
- 3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
- 4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
- 5 How often do you wear: a hat? a scarf? a watch?

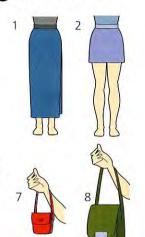


Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

19 I can buy clothes Do Unit 18 first

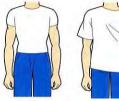
A Describing clothes 60

- long
- 2 short
- 3 cheap
- 4 expensive
- 5 smart
- 6 casual
- 7 small/little
- 8 large/big
- 9 uncomfortable
- 10 comfortable
- tight 11
- 12 loose











I like it – it's really **nice/lovely**.

I don't like it – it's horrible/awful.

Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

- ▶ a cheap tie
- 1 a s______ skirt
- 2 c shoes
- 3 a s handbag
- 4 c_____ clothes

- 5 a L______ T-shirt
- 7 s_____ clothes

Circle the correct word.

- My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
- 1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable/uncomfortable.
- 2 I've got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
- 3 At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
- 4 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap/expensive clothes.
- 5 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
- 6 You need your long/short coat today; it's really cold.
- If you are going to the gym, it's better to wear tight/loose clothes.
- 8 That suit is awful/lovely you must buy it.

Write the opposite of the underlined word.

- ➤ You need a large belt, small
- 1 She's wearing a long coat.
- 2 Are those boots comfortable?
- 4 Was the belt very <u>cheap</u>?
- 5 She doesn't want tight trousers.
- 6 Does this look nice?
- 3 We can wear smart clothes.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.

B Talking about size 60

Questions	Answers	Problems with size
What size are you? What size do you take?	I'm a (size) 12. I take size 40. small/medium/large	It's They're It doesn't They don't It's They it he wrong size.
		It's too long.
	customer	They're too big.

- Complete the sentences.
 - 1 What ▶ size are you?
 - ~ I'm _____14.
 - 2 Is she small, _____, or large?
 - 3 I'm sorry, this shirt is the ______size.
 - 4 Does this jumper _____? ~ No, it's _____tight for me.
 - 5 What size do you _____ ? ~ Small.
 - 6 I like the trousers but they don't _____; they're _____long.

spotlight too and very

There is a difference in meaning between too and very. Her coat is very long. (It's OK.) Her coat is too long. (It's not OK.) These trousers are very tight, but I'm going to buy them. These boots are too tight; I can't wear them.

6 Look at the pictures. What's the problem?



The jacket's too short.









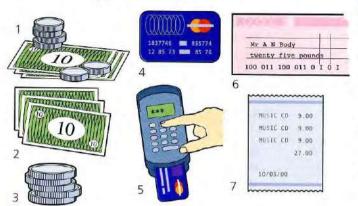
5 Do you always try clothes on? _____

6 How do you usually pay? _

	in a shop ••	
A sl	nop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talking	g. Glossary
SA C SA C	Do you need any help? Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt. What size do you take? I'm a 12.	Do you need any help? also Can I help you? I'm looking for = I want try something on put something on to see if the size is right
C SA	Oh, this is lovely. Can I try it on ? Yes, sure. The changing room is over there.	<pre>changing room a place where you try something on That looks (really nice) = I think it's</pre>
C SA	Oh, no, it's too tight. Here's a size 14.	(really nice) on you pay give money for something cash desk the place where you pay
SA C	That looks really nice. Thanks. Yes, it's fine. I think I'll take it.	credit card e.g. Visa, American Express
SA	Where do I pay? The cash desk is at the front.	spotlight I'll take it/I'll leave it
SA C SA	How would you like to pay? By credit card . That's fine. Thank you.	When you decide to buy something in a shop, you say 'I'll take it/them'. NOT <i>I take</i> it/ <i>I buy</i> it. If you decide not to buy something, you
0	Write the words in correct sentences. ► help / can / I / you / ? Can I help you? 1 I / where / pay / do / ? 2 thanks / no / I'll / it / leave 3 changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ? 4 dress / can / on / this / try / I / ? 5 pair / I'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a 6 help / you / need / do / any / ?	?
8	Write the final word in each sentence. ► What size do you take ? 5 1 Can I try these ? 6	Excuse me. Where's the changing ? Do you need any ?
	2 Pay at the cash 7 3 I like these. I'll take 8 4 I'd like to pay by credit	Oh, that looks You must buy it. How would you like to?
9	ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask and	ther student.
	2 How often do you buy clothes?	

20 I can talk about money Do Unit 1 first

A Money in shops 60



You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They **cost** €9 **each**, which is €27 **altogether**. You can pay **in cash**¹ (**notes**² and **coins**³): for example, you give the shop assistant €30, and he gives you €3 **change**. You can also pay by **credit card**⁴. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to **enter**⁵ (or **put in**) your **PIN**. You can also pay by **debit card** or **cheque**⁶. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a **receipt**⁷.

Glossary

cost PT cost How much does it cost?

= How much is it?

€9 each = €9 for one

€27 altogether = €27 for everything change the money you get back if you give the assistant more than something cost debit card. If you use a debit card, the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).

PIN = Personal Identification Number (also PIN number)

spotlight Money

€5.30 five euros thirty or five thirty

NOT five euros and thirty
£10.99 ten pounds ninety-nine

or ten ninety-nine
a ten pound/euro note not a ten pounds/
euros note

4.1	te the cha, he gives you your cos and a receipt	euros note
D	Correct the mistakes.	
	► Can I pay for cheque? Can I pay by chea	que?
	1 The dictionary cost me eight euros and fift	ty
	2 Could you put your PIN, please?	40 C + 10 40 404444 (10 404444 (10 40444 (10 4
	3 She paid for the dress of cash.	MALINIA NO. 4- 9- S CONTINUE DE CONTINUE D
	4 I've only got a 50 pounds note.	
	5 They're €6 for each.	95 Williamsterringsmitterringsmitterringsmit de 60 ja values
	6 Have you got a bank count?	or of the state of
	7 Three books. That's €42 together.	
	8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assista	ant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.
3	Complete the dialogues.	
	A I'd like this watch, please.	C Hi. How much do these peaches
	B Fine. How would you like to pay?	(4)?
	A By debit (►) card	D They're 50 cents (5)
	B Thanks. Could you (1)	C I'll have six, please, and a melon.
	your (2), please?	D Thank you. That's €4.30 (6)
	Thank you. Here's your watch and your	C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50
	(3)	(7)
	A Thank you.	D That's OK. I've got lots of (8)

B Money in adverts 60



Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.



Earn £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.

Play the Lottery and win €1,000,000!

- Circle the correct answer.
 - ► I bought this table online free.
 - 1 What's the price/bill of these shoes?
 - 2 I don't spend/pay a lot on food.
 - 3 I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
 - 4 I won/earned £100 in the lottery.

Glossary

sell PT sold give something to someone who pays you money for it opp buy PT bought price the money you have to pay for something (If something is half price, you pay 50%.)

spend money on something PT spent pay money for something

free If something is free, you don't pay for it. bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay

online on the internet

save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.

fare the money you pay to go by plane. train, etc.

earn get money for the work you do lottery game where you buy tickets and can win money

win PT won get money etc. in a game

- 5 How much was the train bill/fare?
- 6 Doctors win/earn a lot of money.
- 7 I bought/sold my old car and got a new one.
- 8 She paid the restaurant bill/receipt.
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.
 - pav paid 3 sell_____ 4 earn _____ 5 win _____
- Complete the questions with a word from the box. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

fares online price earn spend / free

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

•	How much do you spend on food every week?	I spend about £20.
1		21 D 10000000000000000000000000000000000
2	Is your phone expensive?	
3	Is water in restaurants?	
4	What's the of a litre of milk?	
5	Are train cheap?	
6	Do women more than men?	100 EURO 100 AUGUST 10

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.

I can talk about the weather

A What's the weather like? 60

	Adjectives	Verbs	Nouns
- \	It's sunny.	The sun's shining.	sun/sunshine
	It's cloudy.		cloud
A	It's wet.	It's raining.	rain u
變	It's windy.	The wind's blowing. PT blew	wind
***************************************	It's icy.		ice u
	It's foggy.		fog u
		It's snowing.	snow u

Match 1 - 9 with a - i

The state of the s		
lt'sd_	a	of cloud today.
lt	b	it foggy outside?
The wind	c	isn't raining.
It isn't	d	cold this morning.
The sun	e	snow on the roads.
ls	f	rain a lot here.
There's a bit	g	the weather like?
There's a lot of	h	very windy.
t doesn't	i	blew my hat off.
What's	i	is shining.
֡	It The wind It isn't The sun Is There's a bit There's a lot of t doesn't	It

spotlight a lot (of)/a bit (of)

a lot of/a bit of + noun We had a lot of rain. There's a bit of fog.

verb + a lot/a bit It snowed a lot. It's raining a bit.

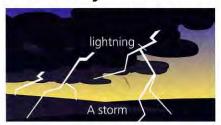
a bit + adjective It's a bit foggy today. It was a bit windy.

Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.

-	There was a lot of ice.	It was very icy .
1	It isn't raining.	There's no
2	Is the sun shining?	Is it ?
3	We often have snow.	It often
4	She doesn't like fog.	She doesn't like weather.
5	It was very windy on Friday.	There was a lot of on Friday.
6	There are no clouds.	It isn't

Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?

B Wet and dry weather 60



In my country, the weather in spring is very **changeable**. It can be **pleasant** and **dry**, but we often have **showers**. It can get **hot** in the summer for two or three months, and in the cities it is often **humid**, especially before a **storm**. It's **cooler** on the coast, where there is usually a sea **breeze**. In autumn, we get some **heavy rain**, perhaps with **thunder** and **lightning**. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and **freezing**, or grey and **damp**.

Glossary

changeable changing a lot pleasant nice dry opp wet shower a short period of rain hot opp cold humid warm, wet and uncomfortable storm see picture breeze a light, pleasant wind cool not hot or warm, but pleasant heavy rain a lot of rain thunder the loud noise of a storm lightning see picture freezing very, very cold damp cold and a bit wet

Circle the correct word.

- ► Humid weather is very pleasant (uncomfortable)
- 1 There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
- 2 Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
- 3 The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cool at midday.
- 4 Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
- 5 In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
- 6 By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

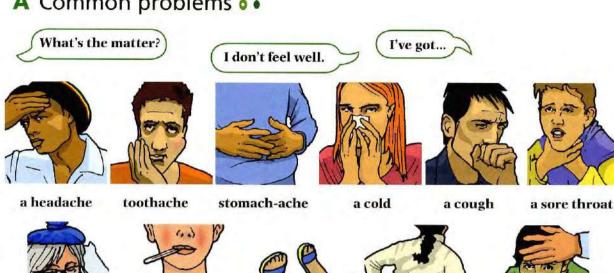
6	Rewrite the sentences	using the	words in	brackets.
	Mewrite the sentences	using the	WOLGS III	DI UCKC CS.

- It's wet outside. (rain) It's raining outside.
- 1 It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was _____
- 2 It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It ______
- 3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There _____
- 4 The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather _____
- 5 It isn't wet today. (dry) It
- 6 We had heavy rain and thunder. (storm) We had

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.

- ► We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
- 1 We have a lot of showers in the spring.
- 2 In winter it's always freezing at night.
- 3 The weather is always the same in the summer.
- 4 We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours.
- 5 It often snows in the winter.
- 6 Our winters are usually dry.
- 7 We often have thunder and lightning. 8 It is usually hot and dry in summer.

A Common problems 6.



Circle the correct answer.

flu

I'm(I've got)a temperature.

a temperature

- 1 My back pain/hurts.
- 2 I feel/'ve got a cold.
- 3 He doesn't feel/be well.
- 4 I feel/'ve got toothache.
- 5 Do you feel/be sick?
- 6 My knee feels/hurts.

7 He's got flu/a flu?

a pain in my leg

also my leg hurts

8 Is/Has she got a temperature?

backache

- 9 I hurt/'ve got a pain in my eye.
- 10 Is/Has she got a temperature?
- 11 She is/'s got a sore throat.
- 12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.

spotlight be ill/sick

I feel sick

III means 'not well'. Rafa's not here today; he's ill. Be sick usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also vomit). If you feel sick, you think

you are going to be sick.

Complete the sentences.

- ► I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache 1 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad 2 He's got a — look, it's 39 degrees. 4 What's the _____? You look terrible. ~ I don't feel 5 I ate too much at lunch and now I've got 6 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels 8 I can't eat anything; I've got a sore
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

B What should I do? 60



Glossary

go and see go to, visit GP (General Practitioner) family doctor chemist's shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy) lie down



for a while for a short time stay in bed go to bed and not get up for a day or two for a short time (not more than three days)

spotlight should + verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. Should is used for giving advice.

I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed. You **shouldn't** go to work today.

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

- Cross out one word you don't need in each sentence.
 - I don't feel me very well.
 - 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
 - 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
 - 3 Go and see your GP doctor.
 - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
- 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
- 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
- 7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
- 8 Lie down for the a while.
- Write some advice to people using should and the word in brackets.
 - - ► I've got a cold. (chemist's) You should go to the chemist's.
 - 1 I've got backache. (lie) 2 My ear hurts. (pharmacy)

 - 3 I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)
 - 4 I feel sick. (while)
 - 5 I've got flu. (GP)

23 I can get help at the chemist's 66

Do Unit 22 first

In a chemist's shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

- Ch Can I help you?
- Yes, I cut1 my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
- Ch You need some antiseptic cream² for it.
- Right. Could I have some plasters3 and some cotton wool4, please?
- Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.
- Ch Yes?
- C Er, I need something for a cold.
- Ch Right, well, try these tablets5 they're very good.
- C OK, and how often do I take them?
- Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
- C Thanks. And I'd like a box of tissues6, please, and some cough medicine7.



Glossary

need If you need something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.

antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it. try use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps

take a tablet eat a tablet (also take medicine)

spotlight Asking for things in a chemist's

You can ask for something for a problem or an illness in a chemist's. Could I have something for a headache, (please)? means 'please give me some medicine because I've got a headache.' I need something for a cold.

0	Correct the spelling.	Be	careful:	one	is	correct.
				~		

- ► chimist Chemist 3 something 6 farmacist 1 coton wool _____ 4 anteseptic 7 creme 7 2 tissus _____ 5 plastres _____ 8 medicin ____
- Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

for toothache, please help you a sore throat some plasters, please take these tablets wool this medicine – it's very good cream tablet three times a day for your finger a box of ✓

Customer

- ► I'd like a box of tissues, please.
 6 You need some plasters ______. 1 Have you got something for _____ ? 7 Try _____. 2 How often do I _____? 3 I need something _____.
- 4 I need some cotton _____. 5 Could I have _____?

Chemist

8 Take one _____. 9 Do you need antiseptic _____? 10 Can I?

Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.

Review: Everyday life

Unit 17

1	Pu	It the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.
	•	We often go on Saturday night. (out) We often go out on Saturday night.
	1	We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for)
	2	Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at)
	3	I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to)
	4	She listens music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping. (to)
	5	On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in)
	6	I talk my parents every evening. (to)
	7	어느 아내가 하면 보고 있다. 나무하다 아내 이렇게 하면 나는 사람들이 되었다. 그 그 그 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그를 가는 것이다.
		My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner together. (round)
	8	What time do you get work in the morning? (to)
2	Co	omplete Jana's daily routine below using phrases a – k.
	a	the shopping g to bed at midnight
	b	breakfast together h home
	C	up at 6.30 a.m ✓ i before breakfast
	d	to work at about 9.30 j a shower
	e	a shave k dinner together
	f	work at 6.00 p.m. and go home
	(1) (4) my	y husband, Marco, and I have the same routine every day. I usually get ▶ and have I get dressed (2), and Marco always has a shower and (3) We have, then Marco and I leave (5) I go to the town centre and do (6) on y way to work. I get (7) I finish (8) We have (9), and I go (10)
L	Jn	it 18
1	Co	omplete the sentences with words from the box.
		tie watch hat socks T-shirt belt jumper tights sandals ✓ gloves boots
	•	You wear them on your feet in summer, sandals
	1	You wear them inside your shoes 6 You wear it round your neck
	2	You wear it on your head 7 You wear it over a shirt
	3	You wear them on your hands 8 You wear them over your legs and feet
	4	[[[[[[[]]]]]] [[[[]]] [[[]] [[]] [[] [[
	5	You wear it on your wrist 10 You wear it round your waist ·

2 Label the colours.

1		
2	SHERICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PR	
3		
4	учитовито устрання по проделення проделення по продужения	
-		

манический	
NOTE THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPE	
тория положения	

3 Write a, some or a pair of.

•	a	hat	2	jeans	6	jacket
-	some		3	ties	7	trainers
	a pair of	gloves	4	trousers	8	sandals
1		scarf	5	shirts		

Unit 19

1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

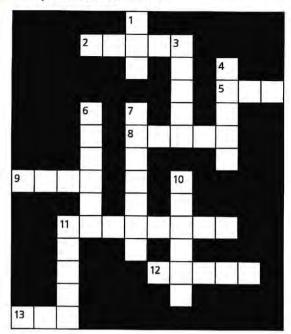
►U								1	
N						10 M			
С	² L	³C		7 P				14 A	
٥							13 C		16 N
M									
F	u –		6C	8H					
٥	1T				9C				
R	E	45				11 H			
T	L		5 T				12 //	-	15 L
Α.	В								

- Opposite of comfortable.
- 1 OK, I'll it.
- 2 Opposite of tight.
- 3 Opposite of expensive.
- 4 What ____ are you? ~ I'm a 14.
- 5 Can I _____ it on?
- 6 The _____room is over there.
- 7 I'd like to _____ in cash.
- 8 Synonym for awful.

- 9 The place where you pay in a shop is the _
- 10 Small, _____ or large?
- 11 Can I _____ you?
- 12 It's the _____ size. It's too small.
- 13 Opposite of smart.
- 14 A person who works in a shop is a shop ...
- 15 No, thanks, I'll _____ it. It's too expensive.
- 16 Do you _____ any help?

2 C	omplete the conversatio	n between the shop assist	ant (SA) and the custo	mer (C).
SA	Hello, do you need any ▶ .	help 7		
C		for some brown trousers	s.	
SA	Right. What size do you (2)	?		
C	Oh, size 10, I think.			
SA	OK, well, how about these			
C		. Where can	I try them (4)	7
SA	The changing (5)	is over there.		
Late				
SA	Hmm, they (6)			
C		small. Can I try o	on a (8)	12, please?
Late				
C		! I'll take (10)		?
SA	At the (12)	desk.		
Ur	nit 20			
1 T	rue or false? Write T or F			
	You pay a receiptF			
1		cheque or bill		
2		to pay for things you buy onlin	ne.	
3				
4		€60 altogether, they cost €1	80 each	
5		shop, they usually ask you to		
6		have to pay for it. It's free		
2 0	omplete the text.			
		00 on the l(1). I was	s so excited! The first day	I went out and
s. h T h	(2) my old car and alf p(5), and I also he next day, I gave my brothe is electricity and phone b	b (1) Twa. (3) a new one. It of s (6) another 5% be sr some money. He doesn't e (11) for him, and then I s girlfriend. And I've still got so	only c(4) €3000 ecause I p(7) (9) very much, so gave him the plane f	because it was (8) cash. I p(10)
Ur	nit 21			
1 V	Vrite a lot, a lot of, a bit, o	or a bit of.		
-	It rained a lot	yesterday – I couldn't go o	ut.	
1				
2	There was	fog this morning. I could	ln't see where I was drivin	g.
3	It snows	in the mountains – someti	mes over twenty centimet	res a day.
4	There's	rain, but it's not much. You	don't need your umbrella	
5	It snowed	last night – only two cen	timetres.	
6	We had	sun yesterday – from morn	ing to evening. It was love	ely.

2 Complete the crossword.



Across

- 2 The wind _____ more in autumn.
- 5 Noun from icy.
- 8 Warm and damp weather feels ______
- 9 You need good _____ for skiing.
- 11 Very cold.
- 12 It rained a lot we had _____ rain.
- 13 Opposite of wet.

Down

- 1 We had a _____ of rain,
- 3 Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
- 4 Adjective from wind.
- 6 Rain for a short time.
- 7 The noise you hear in storms.
- 10 The sun _____ more in summer.
- 11 Adjective from fog.

Unit 22

Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1 – 9.

T	M	X					Н	0	S
В	Α	C	K	A	(C)	H	Ε	J	0
Q	S	0	1	D	0	Y	Α	M	R
R	1	F	L	U	L	Y	D	Z	E
U	C	J	A	H	D	E	Α	K	T
1	K	W	E	S	В	1	C	R	Н
T	0	0	T	H	Α	C	H	E	R
Α	S	٧	E	C	E	G	E	L	0
F	H	U	R	T	S	D	E	M	A
R	S	K	Ε	V	W	E	L	L	T

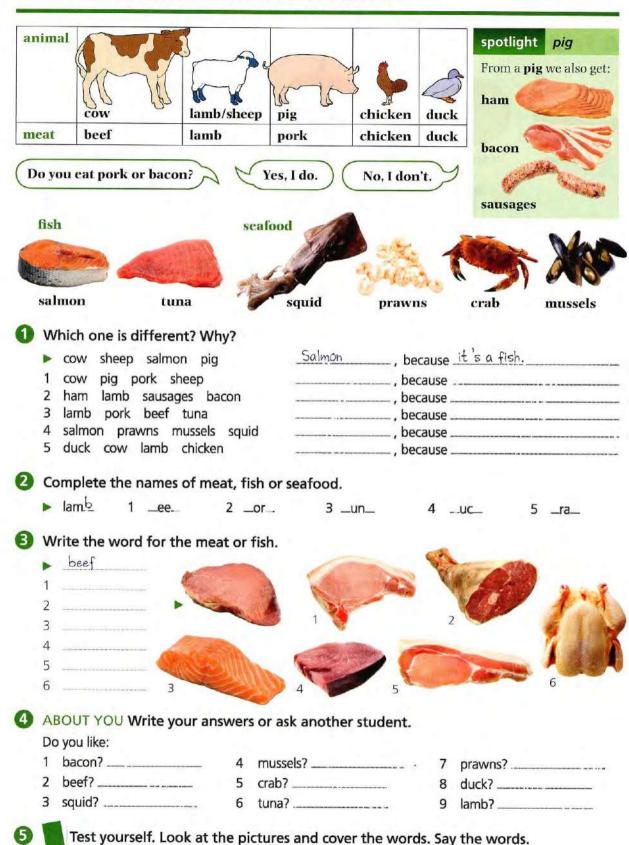
-	I've got a <u>cold</u> .
1	I've got a
2	I've got a
3	
4	I've got
5	I've got
6	I feel
7	I don't feel
8	My arm
9	I've got a pain in my

Unit 23

Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

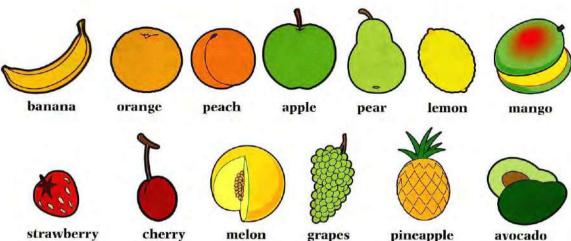
- Ch Good morning, can I ▶ help you?
- C I need (1) ______ for a sore throat.
- Ch Right. (2) _____ they're excellent.
- C OK, how (4) ______ do I (5) _____ them?
- Ch (6) _____ one now, and then every two hours.
- C OK, and (7) _____ I have a (8) _____ of tissues, and some cough (9) _____, please?
- Ch Yes, of course.

24 I can name meat and fish 6.



25 I can name fruit and vegetables

A Fruit 6



Word	Example	Meaning
taste	This juice tastes of orange and lemon.	= it's like orange and lemon when you drink it
sweet	Strawberries are very sweet.	tasting of sugar
bitter	Lemons are very bitter.	OPP sweet
fresh	I eat a lot of fresh fruit.	not old and not from a tin

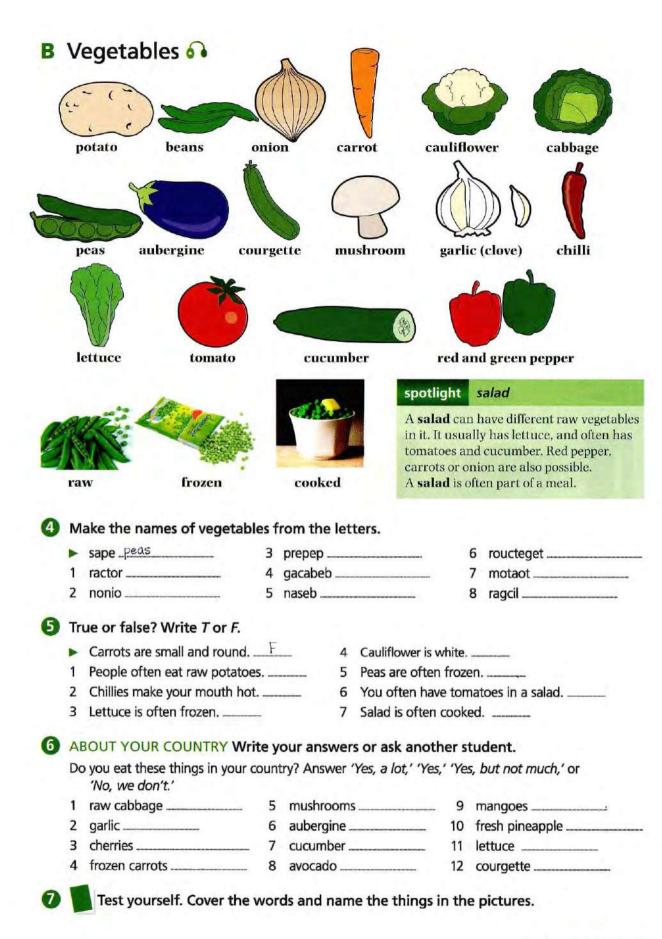
Find the end of each word.

banana | grapesmelonlemonavocadostrawberrycherrypineapplepearorangepeachapple

- Answer the questions.
 - ➤ Are strawberries red or green? <u>red</u> 5 Are grapes big or small?
 - 1 Are peaches sweet or bitter?
 - 2 Are lemons sweet or bitter?
 - 3 Are cherries red or green?
 - 4 Are avocados red or green?
- 6 Is fresh fruit good or bad?
- 7 Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter?
- 8 Are melons big or small?
- Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

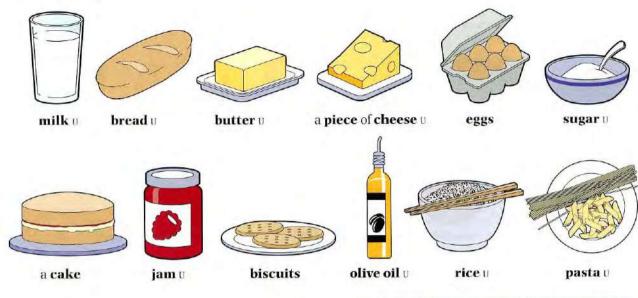
Use the cover card to test yourself.

Write down new words in a notebook.



26 I can buy food in a shop

A Food 60







noodles



a bar of chocolate u

spotlight Ur

Uncountable nouns

The nouns with a U are usually uncountable: butter or some butter NOT a butter/butters
This bread is nice. NOT These breads are nice.
We can make uncountable nouns countable: a piece of cheese a bar of chocolate

0	Tick (✓) the answer	s that are right,	and correct the	answers that are w	vrong.
---	---------------------	-------------------	-----------------	--------------------	--------

- ▶ some oil
 6
 some

 ▶ a milk
 X milk/some milk
 7
 eggs

 1
 biscuits
 8
 a brea

 2
 a piece of cheese
 9
 pasta

 3
 a butter
 10
 rices

 4
 cakes
 11
 a jam

 5
 a cheese
 12
 olives

2 Complete the words.

- ▶ br ♣ △ ₫
 4 bis _____
 8 ri ___

 1 mi ___
 5 some olive ___
 9 a large bar of

 2 some ch ____
 6 six e ___
 ch _____

 3 sug ___
 7 but ___
 10 noo ____
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

B Containers and quantities 6.





a carton of juice

a **packet** of rice and a packet of biscuits

a jar of jam and a jar of olives









a tin of tomatoes

a can of soda

a bottle of wine

a box of chocolates and a box of matches









1 kg



a litre

500 ml 11

spotlight tin and can

We usually say tin when there is food inside, and we say can when there is something to drink inside. A tin of tuna. A can of beer.

100g

Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

- ► There's a jar of jam.
- 1 There's a box of chocolates.
- 2 There's a bottle of water.
- 3 There's a packet of sugar. 4 There's a can of cola.
- 5 There's a jar of coffee. _____

- 6 There's a box of matches.
- 7 There's a carton of milk.
- 8 There's a jar of olives.
- 9 There's a tin of peas.
- 10 There's a packet of rice.

Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

- Can you buy a packet of rice at the shops, please?
- 1 I bought my sister a lovely ______ of chocolates.
- 2 Can I have a _____ of strawberry jam, please?
- 3 We need a _____ of olive oil.
- 4 There's a _____ of orange juice in the fridge.
- 5 For four people, we'll need a _____ of chicken.
- 7 I'd like 200 _____ of ham, please.
- 8 I think there's a of noodles in the cupboard.
- 9 He drinks half a _____ of milk for breakfast.
- 10 I went out and bought a _____ of wine.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

C Buying food 60



Shop assistant (SA)

Customer (C)

- C Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
- SA Right.
- C And have you got any peaches?
- SA Yes. How many would you like?
- C I'd like four, please. Are they ripe?
- SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?
- No. that's all, thanks.



- C I'd like some cheese, please.
- SA Sure. What would you like?
- Oh, that Brie looks nice. C
- SA Yes. it is. How much would you like?
- C About 200 grams.
- SA Right. This piece is just over.
- C That's fine.
- SA OK. Anything else?
- No. that's it. thanks.

-					
TA	Comp	ete	the	dia	logues.
	COLLIP			uiu	logues.

- ► A Yes?
 - B I'd like six pears, please.
- 1 A Have you _____ any apples?
- B Yes. How _____ would you like?
- 2 A I'd like some ham, please.
 - B How _____?
 - A Oh, about 200 grams.
 - B Of course. Anything _____?
 - A No. _____it, thanks.
- 3 A _____I have half a kilo of onions?
 - B Sure. That's _____ under half.
 - A Yeah, that's fine.
- 4 A I'd _____ a melon, but these don't look _____
 - B No, they need two or three more days.

Glossary

Could I have ...? This is another polite way to say 'I want'.

Have you got any ...? = Do you have any ...? ripe If something is ripe, you can eat it now. that's it or that's all = I don't want any more things.

I'd like = I would like (This is a polite way to sav 'I want'.)

just over a little more than opp just under Anything else? = Do you want any more things?

spotlight how much and how many

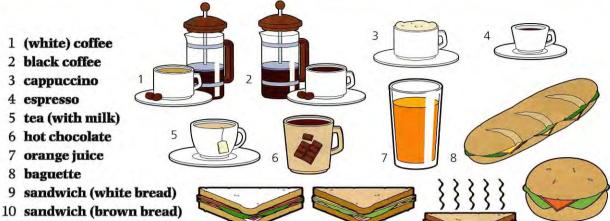
We use how much with uncountable nouns and how many with countable nouns:

How much butter do you want? How many apples do we need?

Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ it / that's / thanks That 's it, thanks.
- 1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I / ? ______
- 2 please / some / like / I'd / sugar _____
- 3 got/ham/you/any/have/?
- 4 much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ? _____
- 5 that's / kilo / just / half / a / over _____
- 6 oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ?

27 I can order in a café 60 Do Unit 26 first



11 toasted sandwich

12 roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

- W Yes, please?
- C I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
- W Is that to eat here or take away?
- C To eat here.
- W OK. Anything else?
- C Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino.
- W OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

Glossary

I'd like = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want')
take away eat in another place (not in the café)
two coffees two cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.)
a couple of minutes two or three minutes
have a seat sit down

spotlight Yes, please? and Yes, please.

Yes, please? = 'What would you like?'
Yes, please is a polite way to say 'yes'.

- Find the end of each word.
 - 1 You can have a roll baguettesandwichtoastedsandwich.
 - 2 You can have a cappuccinoteaorangejuiceespressoblackcoffee.
- Complete the phrases.

-	a ham <u>sandwich</u>	4	black	8	black or coffee?
1	brown	5	eat here or	9	a seat, please.
2	a toasted	6	a of minutes		
3	hot	7	brown or bread?		

Add one word to each line of the conversation.

W	Please?		Yes, please!
C	I like two coffees please.	1	
W	To drink here or away?	2	
C	To drink here. And a toasted ham.	3	W ID and the facilities priving its first Shaffering analysis showing first to act to be not the first showing in the continuous parameters in the continuous priving in the continuous parameters in the continuous parame
W	OK. It will be a couple minutes.	4	
	Have seat, please.	5	

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

A The table 6



- 1 glass of red wine
- 4 oil

7 napkin 11 knife

- 2 salt and (black) pepper
- 5 vinegar
- 8 bowl 9 plate
- 12 spoon

- 3 bottle of mineral water
- 6 glass of white wine
- 10 fork
- Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a $k = \frac{1}{2}$ fe, (1) f k, and (2) s n, and a (3) n n for	
their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p $_$ = e and a (5) b $_$ I. To drink, there's a	
(6) b e of (7) m l w r , and two (8) g s of (9) w e: one ((10)
r \perp d and the other (11) w \perp \perp e. There is also some (12) s \perp t and (13) b \perp \perp k p \perp \perp \perp	r,
and little (14) b s of (15) o _ and (16) v r.	

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have

We don't usually have ...

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B What shall we have?



boiled rice



fried eggs



grilled fish



roast chicken



Steak can be:



medium



well done

MENU

Starters

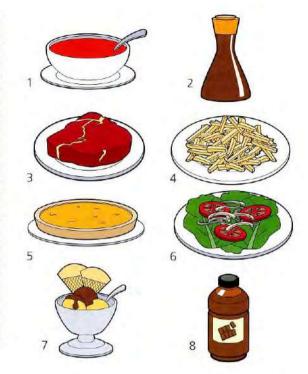
Tomato soup1 Grilled prawns in soy sauce 2 Mussels in white wine and garlic

Main courses

Pan fried tuna with green beans Fillet steak3 with chips4 and mushrooms Roast duck with cabbage and peas Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes Cheese tart5 with mixed salad6

Desserts

Apple tart Ice cream7 with chocolate sauce8



True or false? Write T or F.

- You eat the starter after the main course. 1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork.
- 2 You eat the main course before dessert.
- 3 Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in.
- 4 You eat soup and chips in the same bowl.
- 5 The list of food to eat is called a menu.
- 6 Dessert is the first thing you eat.
- 7 You can roast a chicken or a duck.
- 8 You can boil rice or potatoes.
- 9 Fillet steak comes from a pig.
- 10 You can have cheese tart or apple tart.

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

Complete the sentences.

I'd like roast chicken 1 I love ice c_____. 2 Could I have fillet s ? 3 I'd like a mixed s______.

4 My starter was tomato s_____

- 5 What's your main c ?
- 6 Pass me the soy s______.
- 7 Do you like your steak well d_____?
- 8 I had chicken with b______ rice.

6 ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.

Which starter would you like? Which main course would you like? Which dessert would you like?

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

C Customer and waiter 60

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

- Are you ready to order?
- Yes. I'll have the fillet steak. C
- W And how would you like your steak?
- Rare, please. And I'd like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
- Still or sparkling? W
- C Sparkling.
- W Fine.

Later in the meal ...

- Could I have another glass of wine?
- W Yes, of course.
- Oh, and some more water, please. C
- W Certainly.
- W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
- C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
- W Yes, sure.

Circle the correct word.

- ► I like (I'd like)a coffee.
- 1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
- 2 Are you ready order/to order?
- 3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
- 4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
- 5 Yes, course/of course.
- 6 Could I have a/the bill, please?
- 7 I/I'll have the prawns, please.
- 8 Yes, certainly/certain.

Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

- W Are you ▶ ready to order?
- C Yes, I'll (1) _____ the steak.
- W And (2) _____ would you like it?
- C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
- C Still, please.

Conversation 2

- C Could I have (5) _____ more water, please?
- W Certainly. And would you like a (6) _____?
- C Yes, I (7) _____ have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) _____?
- W Yes, (9) _____.



Glossary

Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you want to eat?

I'll have steak = I'd like steak. on I want steak. How would you like your steak? = Would you like your steak rare, medium or well done? still water water without gas sparkling water water with gas

meal Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals. of course/sure/certainly These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem.'

the bill a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

spotlight another or some more

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns.

e.g. another glass/biscuit/apple.

Say some more with uncountable nouns.

e.g. some more water/wine/bread.

Review: Food and drink

Unit 24

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

chicken 🗸		squid	crab	beef	duck	pig	tuna	mussels	pork
sheep	lamb	salr	mon	COW	prawns	ham			

Animal	Meat	Fish	Seafood	
chicken	chicken			
	31.25/21.			

Unit 25

1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

red	yellow	orange	white/cream	green
red pepper			***************************************	

2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

T	Α	E	L	F	R	E	S	Н
M	U	S	H	R	0	0	M	C
Α	В	1	P	0	T	A	T	0
N	E	R	1	P	E	M	В	0
G	R	Α	P	E	S	E	E	K
0	G	W	U	N	Α	L	Α	E
T	1	R	L	E	M	0	N	D
0	N	1	0	N	Α	N	S	E
P	E	Α	R	S	W	E	E	T

Unit 26

1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

	orange juice wine rice				pasta jam eggs tuna
Packet	Carton	Вох	Bottle	Jar	Tin
sugar					
		1 1			

2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

	Yes, we have.
1	Could
2	l'd
3	Have
4	Anything
5	That's

		like	
	any	hav	/e
T	got	it	please
so	me	you	much
S	ugar	else	we
	thank	s we	ould

Unit 27

6 How ____

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

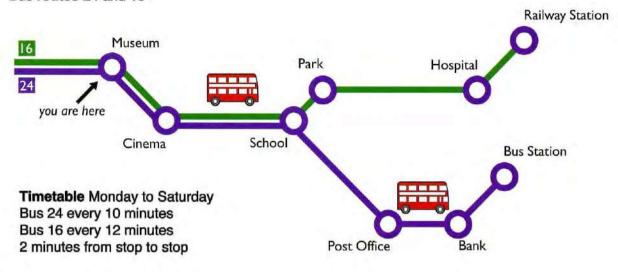
	W	please / yes /? Yes, please?
1	C	sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd
		that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ?
3	C	away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take
		else / fine / anything / ?
		coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas
		be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple
		seat / a / have

Unit 28

1	Co	omplete the sentences.
		Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and _dinner
	1	Three things you eat with: knife,, and
	2	Three parts in a meal: starter,, and
	3	Three ways to cook food: grilled,, and
	4	Three ways to cook steak: rare,, and
	5	Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and
	6	Two things you put on salad: oil and
	7	Two things people drink: red wine and wine.
	8	Two types of mineral water: still and
2		waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. There from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
	-	C Could I see the please? menu
		W Are you ready to?
		C Yes, I have the tomato soup.
		W Right. And for your course?
		C Fillet with chips.
	2	W Do you want red wine or wine?
		C Red, please.
		W OK. Is that a or just a glass?
	3	At the end of the.
		C Could I have the, please?
		W Yes, of
		Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.
		Test yourself, using the cover card.

I can get around on buses 6.

Bus routes 24 and 16



Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop outside the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many stops is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the last stop for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about ten minutes.

Glossary

excuse me We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don't know.

get a bus, train, etc. travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take) go travel

near



outside



run travel on a route (bus, train) every (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc. (bus) stop the place where you get on or off a bus last stop the bus stop at the end of the route get off leave the bus opp get on next stop the first stop after now

spotlight How long does it take?

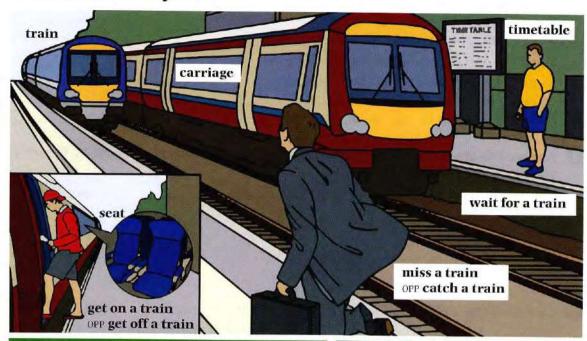
How long? = How much time? How long does it take (to get) to the station?

- ~ It takes about 10 minutes.
- ~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.

VV	rite the words in the corre		make questio	113.	
•	near / bank / stop / does / th	ne 24 / the / ?	Does the 24	stop near the	oank?
1	stops / many / to / how / it /				
2	school / me / bus / which / e				
3	take / long / how / does / to				
4	post office / the 24 / does / d				
5	off / do / get / I / where / cin	프로스에 이 쓰고 게			
6	park / the 24 / does / to / go				
7	often / run / does / the 24 /				
8	which / stop / last / is / for / t				
yo	nswer the questions in Exc ou are at the museum. Yes, it does			ormation on pa	
1					
1					
2			7		minutes.
	the will be successful to the		7		
3 4 Co	omplete the text, using th	minutes e bus map i	8 nformation or	n page 78.	
3 4 Co Th		minutes. e bus map i the 24	8 nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo	n page 78. r the 24, the first	
3 4 Co Th (1)	omplete the text, using the	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (8 nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2)	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir	nema; the
3 4 Co Th (1) (3)	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus ► routes is the muse	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w	8 nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) there everybody	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4)	nema; the
3 4 Co Th (1) (3)	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus ► routes is the muse stop is the	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) here everybody e museum too, b	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5)	nema; the to the
3 4 Co Th (1) (3)	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus <u>routes</u> is the muse stop is thethe bus. The 1	e bus map i the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) here everybody museum too, b you how often t	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5)	nema; the to the . The 24
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus ► routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 ilway station. The (6)	e bus map i the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) here everybody museum too, b you how often t	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5)	nema; the to the . The 24
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu	is the bus. The 1 way station. The (6) complete the text, using the routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 ilway station. The (6)	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) here everybody museum too, b you how often t ten minutes. It (n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) he buses (7)	nema; the to the . The 24
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 sliway station. The (6) as (8) (9) com the school to the park.	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the tells	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo (2) where everybody e museum too, b you how often t ten minutes. It (n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) the buses (7) 10)	to the to the The 24 two minutes to ge
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 silway station. The (6) sis (8) (9) om the school to the park. BOUT YOU Write your ansels there a bus stop near you	minutes. e bus map i the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the tells swers or ask	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) where everybody 2 museum too, b 3 you how often t 4 ten minutes. It (4 another stude 5, where is it exa	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) he buses (7) 10) ent.	to the . The 24 two minutes to ge
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 silway station. The (6) as (8) (9) om the school to the park. BOUT YOU Write your ans Is there a bus stop near you Which buses stop there?	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the tells swers or ask r house? If yes	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo (2) where everybody e museum too, b you how often to ten minutes. It (another stude s, where is it exa	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) the buses (7) 10) ent.	to the . The 24 two minutes to ge
3 4 C(1) (3) rai bu frc	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus routes is the muse is the muse the bus. The 1 silway station. The (6) sis (8) (9) om the school to the park. BOUT YOU Write your ans is there a bus stop near you Which buses stop there? How often do they run?	minutes. e bus map i : the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the tells swers or ask r house? If yes	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo 2) where everybody e museum too, b you how often t ten minutes. It (another stude s, where is it exa	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) he buses (7) 10) ent.	to the
3 4 Co Th (1) (3) rai bu fro A 1 2 3	omplete the text, using the sere are two bus routes is the muse stop is the the bus. The 1 silway station. The (6) as (8) (9) om the school to the park. BOUT YOU Write your ans Is there a bus stop near you Which buses stop there?	minutes. e bus map i the 24 um, and the (bus station, w 6 starts at the tells swers or ask r house? If yes	nformation or 4 and the 16. Fo (2) where everybody e museum too, b you how often to ten minutes. It (another students, where is it exa	n page 78. r the 24, the first stop is the cir has to (4) ut it (5) he buses (7) 10) ent.	to the to the . The 24 two minutes to ge

Practise the questions using the CD-ROM.

A Train vocabulary 60



Glossary

get/take a train travel by train the 12 o'clock train the train that leaves at 12.00 journey when you travel from A to B fare money you pay to travel a fast train OPP a slow train (railway) station a place where trains stop and people get on and off

spotlight

Last has different meanings:

- 1 final The last train leaves at 11.30 p.m. = There are no trains after 11.30 p.m.
- 2 most recent My last train journey was two weeks ago.

Answer the guestions.

- ▶ What's another verb for get a train? take a train
- 1 What's the opposite of a fast train?
- 2 What's the opposite of get on the train?
- 3 What's the opposite of miss a train?
- 4 What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 7?.....
- 5 What do you sit on in a train?
- 6 Where do you catch a train?

Complete the sentences.

- ► We can get the 7.45 train 5 The ______ train is at 12.00p.m.
- 1 How much was the train _____?
- 2 Our seats are in the second 3 Sorry I'm late. I _____ the train to Zug.
- 4 We can ______ a train.

- 6 We _____ for the train in the café.
- Have a look at the I think there's a train to London at 6.15.
- It's a long _____ from Lisbon to Paris.

B Buying a ticket 60

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** (P) is talking to someone at the **ticket office** (O) at Bristol Station.

- P A single to Cardiff, please.
- O That's £10, please.
- P Right, and when's the next train?
- O There's one at 10.07.
- P Fine. Do I have to change?
- O No. it's direct.
- P That's good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
- 0 10.56.
- P OK. And which platform is it?
- O Platform 6.
- P Right, thanks.

Platform

Glossary

passenger a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.

ticket office the place where you buy tickets in a station

single or single ticket a ticket for a journey from A to B (A return is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)

next The next train is the first one after now.

change trains get off one train and get on another

direct A journey is **direct** if you don't need to change trains.

get to arrive at or in opp leave

platform the part of the station where you get on and off the train

spotlight book something in advance

London Paddington

If you **book a seat (in advance)**, you buy a ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. In a hotel, you can **book a room (in advance)**, and in a restaurant you can **book a table**. You can also say **reserve a seat** or **room** or **table**.

3 Complete the questions using words from the box.

	direct	London	office	train	is it 🗸		return	advance	seat	
•	Which pla	atform is it	Andrew Markette and the second second	?		4	When o	lo we get to .		?
1	Can I boo	ok in		?		5	Where's	the ticket		?
2	Do you w	ant a single	or		?	6	When's	the next		?
3	Is the trai	n		?		7	Can I re	serve a		?

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Cheltenham

2	8.35	⊠ 9.08 9.18	⊠ 10.40	
			ere isn't a ▶ direct	
to (1)	at Kem	ble. The train (2)	Chelte	nham at 8.35 from
(3)	2, and it (4)	to Kemble at 9.08. T	hen I have to catch the
9.18, which	gets (5)	London Pad	dington at 10.40. A (6)	
ticket costs :	£22, but I can get a re	eturn for £40 if I boo	ok in (7)	amelinama a

Kemble

5	ABOUT YOU	Write your	answers or	ask	another	student.
---	------------------	------------	------------	-----	---------	----------

- When was your last train journey?

 Where did you go, and why?
- 3 What was the fare?
- 4 Did you book in advance?
- 5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains?

31 I can ask for and give directions 60

Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

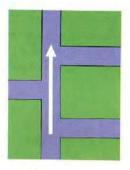
Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

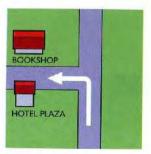
spotlight

Excuse me...

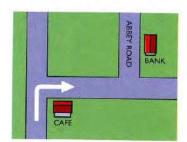
It is polite to say excuse me to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.



Go straight on. or Just keep going. It's about ten minutes.

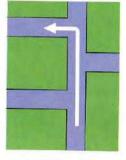


Go along here and turn left. The bookshop is opposite the Hotel Plaza.



Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is on your right.





Go along here and take the second turning on the left.



It's the third turning on the right. There's a cinema on the corner.



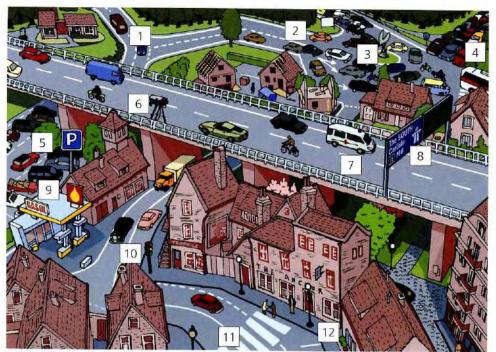
Thanks very much.

0	M	ake sentences from the words.
	•	turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.
	1	excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how/ to / ?
	2	here / left / along / and / turn / go
	3	bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here / ?
	4	the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
	5	way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you / ?
	6	left / Road / into / Foster / turn
2	Co	omplete the phrases.
		Turn left or right 5 Keep
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	On the ? Excuse ?
3	Co	omplete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.
	1	A Excuse ► me . How do I (1)to
		the cinema from here?
		B OK. Go (2) on, and it's the second no, the
		third (3) on the (4)
		A Thanks very (5)
		B You're welcome.
	2	A (1) me. Is there a post office
		(2)here?
		B Yes. Go (3) here and (4)
		the second (5) on the (6)
		The post office is (7) the bank.
		A (8) very much.
		B That's OK. No problem.
	3	A Excuse me. Do you know the (1) to the
		Bonham Hotel?
		B No, I'm sorry, I don't.
		A OK. Thanks Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?
		C Yes. (2) Frith Street
		and the hotel is on the next (4) on your
		(5)
		A Thanks very much.
		P. Not at all

Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?

32 I can talk about roads and traffic

A In town 6



- 2 traffic u
- 5 car park
- 3 roundabout 6 speed camera 9 petrol station
- 1 junction 4 traffic jam 7 main road
 - 8 road sign
- 10 traffic light(s)
- 11 pedestrian crossing
- 12 pavement

Circle the correct answer.

- ► traffic park/light 3 speed light/camera 6 car road/park
- 2 main sign/road
- 1 petrol station/jam 4 road camera/sign
 - 5 pedestrian crossing/park
- 7 traffic jam/crossing

Complete the sentences.

- You can go the traffic light is green.
- 1 Where's the nearest petrol _____?
- 2 We live on a noisy _____ road.
- 3 Can you read that road _____?
- 4 The car _____ was full, so we parked on the street.
- 5 Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian
- 6 Be careful! There are _____ cameras on the main road.
- 7 At the _____, do we go left, right or straight on?
- 8 The ______ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
- 9 Walk on the _____, not in the road!
- 10 Drive slowly and turn left at the next ______.



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Out of town 60

Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

- How far is it from London to Bath?
- B It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres.
- And what's the best way to get there? M
- Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
- M Thanks. And what's the speed limit on motorways here?
- B 70 miles an hour. That's about 110 kilometres an hour.
- OK. And are they very busy? M
- Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour - especially when there's an accident.
- But you still use the motorway? M
- Yes. because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to overtake. Oh, and Marco - remember to drive on the left!

Glossary

How far is it? = How many kilometres or miles is it? take the M4 go on to and travel on the M4 motorway a large, fast road between towns speed limit the fastest speed you are permitted to go busy A busy road has a lot of cars on it. orr quiet rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work accident

lane

overtake pass another car by going faster drive go somewhere in your car

4		Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.
	•	The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines. lane
	1	A large, fast road between two towns.
	2	The busy time when people go to work.
	3	Pass another car by driving faster.
	4	The fastest speed you are permitted to go.
	5	When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash.
	6	The opposite of a busy road.
6	Co	omplete the sentences.
	•	You can take a country road, but the <u>motorway</u> is quicker.
	1	It's a very road in the rush hour.
	2	Go into the fast when you other cars on the motorway.
	3	How is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
	4	The best way to get to the airport is to the M25. Oh, remember to
		on the left!
6	Al	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
	1	How many lanes do motorways have?
	2	What's the speed limit on motorways?
	3	Do you have speed cameras on roads?
	4	Do you drive on the left in your country?
	5	When's the rush hour?

33 I can understand signs and notices 60

Sign or notice	Where?	Meaning
ladies gents toilet	in a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.	₩C WC
entrance or way in	in a car park, museum, cinema, etc.	Go in here.
exit or way out		Go out or leave here.
no entry		You can't go in here.
no exit	1+ (You can't go out here.
no smoking	in a cinema, restaurant, etc.	You can't smoke here.
no parking	in the street, or in front of a garage or entrance	You can't leave your car here.
please do not disturb	hotel room door	I'm sleeping, so don't come in.
queue here	at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office	Wait in a line here.
nothing to declare	at an airport	you have no tax to pay
sale	in a shop window	period when a shop sells things at a lower price than normal
out of order	on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.	This isn't working. or It's broken.
please ring for attention	at reception in a hotel, office, etc.	Ring the bell and somebody will come.
no vacancies	in the window of a small hotel	The hotel is full.

0	Match	1-9	with	a – j
U	Match	1-3	MITH	a -

-	No smokingd_	a	in a hotel reception
1	No parking	b	on a hotel room door
2	Toilet	c	on a drinks machine
3	Queue here	d	in a café ✓
4	Out of order	e	in a shop window
5	Please do not disturb	f	in front of a garage
6	Sale	g	in a hotel window
7	Entrance	h	at the back of a restaurant
8	No vacancies	i	at the front door of a museum
9	Please ring for attention	j	inside a post office

2 Complete the signs in different ways.

-	No smoking	3	Please	6	Please
1	No	4	No	7	Nothing to
2	Way	5	Way		

Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.

Review: Getting around

Unit 29

Correct the mistakes.

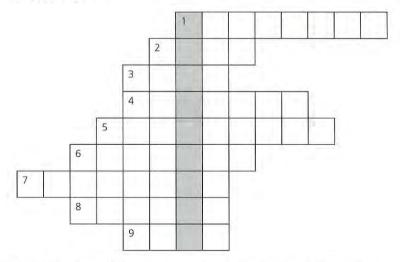
8 Do the buses run all ten minutes? ...

10 What often do the buses run?

•	Where do I get out the bus for the park? Where do I get off the bus for the park?
1	This bus go to The National Museum?
2	How many stopping is it to the railway station?
3	Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4	How long does it make to get to the centre?
5	Does the 31 stop next the post office?
6	Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
7	The which bus do I get to Queen Street?

Unit 30

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?



9 How long time does it take to the centre?

1	The part of the station	where you	get on or	get off a	train
---	-------------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-------

- 2 The opposite of slow.
- 3 If you get to the station late, you could ... ____ your train.
- 4 Book (a seat).
- 5 This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
- 6 When you travel from one place to another.
- 7 Part of the train where people sit.
- 8 A single or return
- 9 Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word

IV	he assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.	Bristol - Manchester (change at Birmingham)
	► Single to Manchester, please.	9.58 (platform 4) gets to
Α	That's £40, please.	Birmingham 11.26
Р		train leaves Birmingham 11.48
A	9.58.	- arrives Manchester 1.23
P	Is it (2)?	single £40, return £75
Α	No, you have to (3) at Birmingham.	The second secon
P	OK. And when does the Manchester train (4)	?
Α		
P	And when does it (5)	Manchester?
Α		
P	Right, and which (6) is that?	
Α	Four.	
1 A	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the	sentence.
	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning/the left. On The bank is on right.	sentence.
1 A	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning/the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river?	sentence.
1 A	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning/the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left.	sentence.
1 A	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right.	
1 A 1 2 3 4	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning/the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left.	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5	word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the Take the second turning the left. on The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank?	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5	Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street. Turn right into the Duke Street.	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 2 Ci	Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street. Turn right into the Duke Street. The bank is opposite of the hotel.	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 2 Ci	Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street. Tors out one word in each sentence to make the sentence Turn right into the Duke Street. The bank is opposite of the hotel. Go straight on and keep to going.	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 2 CI	Take the second turning/the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street. Toss out one word in each sentence to make the sentence Turn right into the Duke Street. The bank is opposite of the hotel. Go straight on and keep to going. Is there a post office near from here?	
1 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 2 Ci	Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street. Tors out one word in each sentence to make the sentence Turn right into the Duke Street. The bank is opposite of the hotel. Go straight on and keep to going.	

Unit 32

-						
1	Tick	(1	true)	or	ta	Ise.

		TRUE	FALSE
-	You put money in a traffic light.		✓
1	A motorway is bigger than a main road.		*
2	You walk on a pedestrian crossing.		
3	You drive your car on the pavement.	termina militari de la companya de l	
4	Road signs tell you what to do.		J
5	Roads are quiet in the rush hour.		incommunity and an analysis.
6	You can get a train at a petrol station.		,
7	If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy.		**************************************
8	Motorways have more than one lane.	-	
9	It's a good idea to overtake at a junction.	ate stransistration and a second	
0	Cars drive round a circle at a roundahout		

2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an ▶ accident on the M40 m.	(1) near
Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s	Principal in the house and he
(2) lost control when it was trying to o	(3) a bus, and hit
two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the a	(4), and say the fast
(5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an	hour. This will mean long
t j(6) during the r	
and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway	if possible and to
t (8) a different route into Oxford.	

Unit 33

		100	1900	
Compl	ete	the	dia	oques.

	implete the dialogues.	
•	Do we pay for things here? ~ I think so. It says 'queue here'.	
1	Can I leave my car here? ~ No, the sign says	
2	Can we go in here? ~ Yes, that sign says	
3	Let's stay in this hotel. ~ We can't. Look, it says	
4	Can we clean this bedroom now? ~ No, it's says	
5	Is everything cheaper here this week? ~ Yes, look, it says	in the window.
6	Can I use that telephone? ~ No, it says it's	
7	Can we go out here? ~ No, that sign says	
8	Can I have a cigarette? ~ No. It says	

34 I can talk about my country 60



Brazil is enormous. The Atlantic coast¹ is more than 3,000 kilometres long, and in the north, south, and west, there are borders² with ten different countries. The longest river³ is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain⁴ in Brazil. The capital, Brasilia, is inland, but many of the major cities are on the coast. The most famous is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain, Corcovado, and some great beaches. It is very popular with tourists.

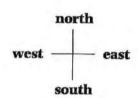
► The town in the north is Recife.

1 The town in the south is _

Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.

Glossary

enormous very big 3,000 kilometres long 3,000 kms from one end to the other 3,000 metres high 3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high NOT tall.) capital a city where a country has its government inland not near the sea major large and important famous If something is famous. many people know about it. (Rio is famous for Carnival.) beach area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana popular If something is popular, many people like it.



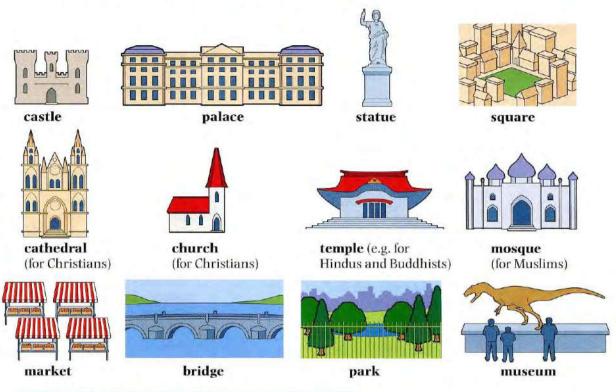
6 In the north, it has a border with ...

7 A nonular city with tourists is

				302(3) (f)		bob.	and city with tou	11313	13
	2	The capital is		8		It's fam	ous for Sugar Lo	oaf _	
	3	The longest river is the					isn't near the se		
	4	The highest mountain is					on the		
	5	In the south, it has a border wit	h_						
2		Test yourself. Don't look a					u say about th	ese	places?
	-	Recife (It's a town in the)	1	The Amazon		3	Brasilia	5	Argentina
		Recife It's a town in the north of Brazil.	2	Pico da Neblina		4	Porto Alegre	6	Rio de Janeiro
3	Al	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write	yo	ur answers or a	35	k ano	ther student.		
	1	What's the capital, and where is	s it?						220
	2	What are some of the other ma							
	3	Does it have borders with any o							
	4	Which places are popular in sun	nme	er?					
	5	What are the famous places in y	ou	r capital city?					

35 I can talk about my town Do Unit 34 first

A Buildings and places in a town 60



building e.g. shop, church, castle NOT square, park, etc.

Correct	the	spelling	mistakes.
Correct	me	spening	mistakes.

- museom museum
- 1 brige _____
- 2 scuare
- 3 castel_____
- 4 catedral
- 5 parque ______
- 7 bilding _____

spotlight p

place

We can use **place** as a general word for a town, part of a town, a hotel, etc.

Prague is **a nice place**.

The Ritz is a great place to stay.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ► My sister got married in our little <u>church</u>.
- 1 I think Buddhists use that ______.
- 2 The _____ is the best place to see the river.
- 3 The _____ is the cheapest place to buy food.
- 4 You can learn about the history of the town in the local _____.
- 5 You can see children playing in the ______ from my hotel window.
- 6 There is a _____ of Nelson Mandela in the main _____
- 7 The _____ and ____ are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
- 8 The square is a nice ______ to sit and watch people.



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Facts 6

size	It's a	big/large	city	Glossary
		medium-sized small	town village	fact a piece
location	It's	West	orth-east - East outh-east	something city a very e.g. 2 mill town smal e.g. 30,00 village smal e.g. 1,000 countrysis location the something Rome population people wh
population	It's	over about just under } 10,000		over 1 mile opp under just under
interesting facts	It's	famous for its cathedral modern industrial		just over) modern of industrial industry,
	It has	lots of historic buildings		steel historic im

e of true information ig or small gis large town, ion people ller than a city, O people aller than a town, people, and in the de. ne place where g is, e.g. 50 kms from the number of o live in a place more than 1 mile a little under (also the present opp old having a lot of e.g. making cars or portant in history

Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east on the coast famous for historic buildings over two million an industrial town just under 50,000 on the River Duero a small village south-west of the capital about 3,000 a large city a medium-sized town

Size	Location	Population	Interesting facts
	in the north-east	7 7 7 7	

6	Comp	lete	the	text	about	Turin.

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write a similar text about your city/town/village.

C Opinions 60

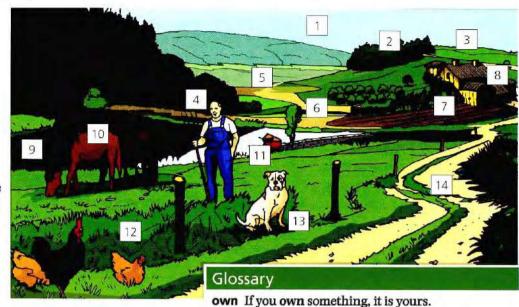
Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	What's your opinion of the new cathedral? ~ I think it's wonderful.	Your opinion is what you think about something; it is not a fact.
busy	It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.	If a place is busy , it is full of people, cars, and activity. opp quiet
crowded	The bars get very crowded in the evenings.	full of people or too full of people
polluted dirty	It's very polluted because of all the industry. The buildings are very dirty .	a polluted place has dirty air, water, etc.
cosmopolitan	London and New York are very cosmopolitan cities.	having people from many different countries living there
there's lots to do	There's lots to do in the evening — discos, cinemas, and so on.	= there are many activities and places to visit opp there's nothing to do
nightlife	The nightlife in my town is very good.	places to go in the evening: bars, clubs, etc.
safe	It's safe during the day but can be dangerous at night.	free from danger. If a town is safe , you don't need lots of police. orp dangerous

7	Do	o the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (🗸) yes or no.
		YES NO YES NO
	•	'The streets are very dirty.' 4 'There's nothing to do at night.'
	1	'I think it's very polluted, don't you?'
	2	'There's lots to do during the day.'
	3	'I think the nightlife is great.'
8	Co	omplete the dialogue.
	Α	What's your ▶ opinion of Walton?
	В	Well, there are people from all over the world, so it's very (1)
	Α	Yes, but is it safe?
	В	Well, every city is a bit (2) at night, but there's a lot to (3)
		here, and the (4) is very good – lots of bars and clubs.
	Α	
	В	It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5) at the weekends, with all the tourists.
		The centre is also quite dirty; the river is (6) because of the industry.
9	AE	BOUT YOUR TOWN Write your opinions, or ask another student.
	1	Is your city/town/village a safe place to live, or is it dangerous?
	2	What is there to do during the day?
	3	Is it usually busy or quiet?
	4	What about the nightlife?
	5	Is it a very cosmopolitan place?
	6	Is it a nice place to live?

36 I can describe the countryside

A On the farm 60

- 1 sky 2 wood
- 3 hill
- 4 farmer
- 5 valley
- 6 tree
- 7 field
- 8 farm (the house and fields)
- 9 lake
- 10 horse
- 11 boat
- 12 grass
- 13 dog
- 14 path



Jack Robson is a farmer. He **owns** Eatwell Farm. He **grows** fruit and **a few** other **crops**.

grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.

a few some; not a lot

crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

Look a	t the picture	and	the text	True or	false?	Write	Tor	F.
--------	---------------	-----	----------	---------	--------	-------	-----	----

- ► There's a lake near the trees. ______
- 1 There is nothing in the field. _____
- 2 The farmer's in the boat.
- 3 The path goes to the lake.
- 4 The wood is on the hill.
- 5 The dog lives on the farm.
- 6 The horse is eating the grass. _____
- 7 The sky's grey.
- 8 There are a lot of chickens.
- 9 The farmer grows fruit.

2 Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

ABOUT YOU

•	Do you live near a w <u>○</u> <u>o</u> d?	Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.
1	Do you live in a $v \perp II \perp y$ or on a $h \perp II$?	
2	Can you see any gra where you are now?	No to statistical and an analysis of the state of the sta
3	Can you see a f _ w tr s where you are now	?
4	Are there any f ds near your home?	
5	Do you _ wn a d _ g or a h _ rs _ ?	
6	What cr _ ps do people gr _ w where you live?	
7	Do you know any f _ r _ e _ s?	

- 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?

B In the countryside 60

I live alone in a beautiful area in the countryside. In the mornings, it is so quiet, I sit and listen to the birds – it's wonderful. I've got a garden with lots of flowers and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat fresh food, which is very healthy. The big problem is that public transport is terrible, but I've got a bike if I need to go to town. And it's a bit lonely too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I look after his chickens for him.



Glossary

area a part of a town, country or the world the countryside a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities

bird 🍆

wonderful very good opp terrible flower

fresh food food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin

healthy If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well. public transport system of buses and trains

bike (also bicycle) you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike

AROUT YOU

look after If you look after an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.

Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write S or D.

-	We always use public transport/the buses and trains here.	S
1	These carrots are fresh/clean.	
2	She's looking at/looking after the dog.	
3	I think city life is wonderful/terrible.	
4	Have you got a bike/bicycle?	
5	Are you alone/lonely at the moment?	
6	She's healthy/very well.	
7	He lives in the countryside/on a farm.	
8	He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.	

spotlight alone and lonely

Alone and lonely mean 'not with other people'. If you are lonely, you aren't happy about it. If you are alone, you can be happy or unhappy.

She likes living alone, you She

She likes living alone. NOT Shelikes living lonely.

She's **lonely**. = She would like to have more friends.

6 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

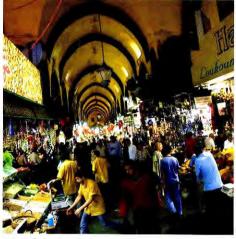
		18001100
-	I sometimes have to look afer children. after	I look after my children every day.
1	I often buy floweres.	
2	I love the contryside.	
3	I'm very helthy	
4	I see lots of brids in my aerea.	Trusts and commenced by the property of the pr
5	Our public transporte is wonderfull.	
6	I'm often alon in the evening.	
7	I eat fraish fruit every day.	
8	I never feel lonley.	

ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.

37 I can talk about shops

A Places to shop 60

Places	What they sell
market (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)	food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers
shopping centre (a number of shops, usually indoors)	everything
department store (a large shop)	almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume
supermarket (a large shop)	food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen
hypermarket	the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns.
butcher's	meat
baker's	bread and cakes
chemist's	medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo
deli(catessen)	sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee
paper shop or newsagent's	newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes



An indoor market

spotlight

Noun + shop

For many shops, we often use noun + shop: shoe shop, clothes shop, bookshop, music shop (for CDs and DVDs), fruit and vegetable shop, etc.

- Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.
 - ▶ I got the vegetables from the... supermarket baker's market fruit and vegetable shop
 - 1 I got the bread from the... hypermarket baker's deli butcher's
 - 2 I got the meat from the... supermarket baker's market butcher's
 - 3 I got these jeans from a... market paper shop department store clothes shop
 - 4 I got this shampoo from the... deli chemist's supermarket department store
 - 5 I got the cheese from a... supermarket market stall deli chemist's
 - 6 I got these CDs from the... shopping centre newsagent's department store music shop
- Write two things you can buy in each of these places.
 - ▶ department store bed television 4 newsagent's
 - deli ,...... 5
 - 5 baker's
 - 2 chemist's
- 6 music shop _____
- 3 market
- 3

Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?

B Shopping habits 60

Hypermarkets are so **convenient** – you can **get** everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it's quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend.
I don't like queueing at the checkout!

You can **choose** from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I **prefer** markets.

They're friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I get a lot of things on the internet. They always deliver to your home.

Glossary

convenient easy and quick to use get buy

do (the) shopping buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap

queue wait in a line of people

checkout the place in a supermarket where you pay **choose** decide which thing you want

prefer like something or someone more than another

fill make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)

trolley



basket



deliver take things to a person or a place

4	Tr	ue or false? Write T or F.
	-	If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient.
	1	You can't get CDs in a hypermarket.
	2	You can fill a trolley or a basket.
	3	You go to clothes shops to do the shopping.
	4	You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay.
	5	You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops.
	6	You pay at the checkout in a supermarket.
	7	At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket.
	8	All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home.
5	Co	emplete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)
		ABOUT YOU
	1	When do you or your family usually do the s?
	2	Do you pr supermarkets or small shops?
	3	Do you often have to q at the checkout?
	4	Do you think supermarkets are co?
	5	Do supermarkets in your town d things to your home?
	6	Where do you a your fruit and yourstables?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.

38 I can talk about my home

A Flats 6

I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friend

- 1 (on) the top floor
- 2 (on) the second floor
- 3 (on) the first floor
- 4 (on) the ground floor
- 5 garden
- 6 steps
- 7 (in) the basement
- 8 rubbish u
- 9 front door
- 10 stairs
- 11 lift
- 12 flat
- 13 balcony

٠		13
dly.		Miki Ferdy
7	2	Helen Simon
	3	John Lucy
	4	Anna Rob 6 7
	5	

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ► Helen lives on the second floor. ______
- 1 John and Lucy live on the ground floor. _____
- 2 Miki lives on the top floor.
- 3 Anna lives on the first floor.
- 4 They put their rubbish in the lift.
- 5 Simon lives in the basement.
- 6 Ferdy's flat has got a balcony.
- 7 Rob's flat has got a garden.
- 8 The steps are at the front door.
- 9 Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift.

Complete the words.

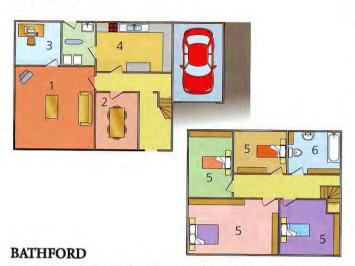
- ▶ lift
- 1 b____t
- 2 b___k of f___s
- 3 g .___ d f___r
- 4 f___t d__r
- 5 s____s

- 6 g____n
- 7 s___s
- 8 n____r
- 9 b____v
- 10 t__nc___e



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B Houses 60



Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room¹, dining room², study³, modern kitchen⁴ and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms⁵ and a family bathroom⁶. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

4 Find the end of each word.

studyviewmodernlivingroomtoiletkitchenhomeparking diningroomupstairsbedroomutilityroombathroom

Glossary

modern of the present time opp old view what you see from the house utility room a room where you do the washing, ironing, etc.

upstairs



OPP downstairs

outside not in a house or other
building OPP inside

garage a building where you park
your car

parking u a place where you can park
(leave) your car

spotlight flat, house and home

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

A **house** is a building with rooms on two or more floors.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

5	Compl	ete	the	text.

6

room, dining
room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) It's in the town centre, and from the living
room I've only got a (3) of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on
the street because I don't have a (4), but it's got a small (5), so I can eat
(6) when it's warm.
My brother's got a house in a village near me, and from the house he's got fantastic
(7) of the countryside. Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large
(8) and a (9) where my brother works. (10) there are four
(11) and two (12), so there's lots of space when I visit with friends.
There's also (13) for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat
(14) all the time.
ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
1 Do you live in a house or a flat?
2 If it's a flat, which floor are you on?
3 Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it?
4 What's the view? Is it nice?
5 Have you got parking?
6 What rooms have you got in your home?

39 I can describe a kitchen

A In the kitchen 60

- 1 shelf plural shelves
- 2 tap (turn the tap on/off)
- 3 cup(s)
- 4 microwave
- 5 frying pan
- 6 freezer
- 7 sink
- 8 saucer(s)
- 9 hob
- 10 saucepan
- 11 (rubbish) bin
 The bin is full OPP empty
- 12 oven
- 13 fridge
- 14 washing machine
- 15 cupboard
- 16 dishwasher
- 17 cooker



- Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.
- ▶ Put the milk in the fridge
 - 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w_____ m____.
 - 2 Put the dirty plates in the d_____ or the s_____.
 - 3 Put the cups and s______ in the c_____
 - 4 Put the books on the s
 - 5 Put the empty packets in the b_____
 - 6 Put the meat in the o______.
 - 7 Cook the eggs in the f_______p____.
 - 8 Put the ice cream in the f_____.
 - 9 Is the rubbish bin f_____?
 - 10 Heat the soup in the m_____ or on the h_____
 - 11 Could you turn the t______ off?
 - 12 Boil the potatoes in that s_____.
- 2 ABOUT YOU Write down anything in the picture you haven't got.
 - ► I haven't got a microwave, and my washing machine isn't in the kitchen.

 I haven't got ______
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.

B Using the kitchen 6.

Housework

- 1 do the shopping
- 2 put the shopping away (= in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
- 3 put the dirty clothes in the washing machine; turn it on
- 4 clean the cooker
- 5 take the washing (= the clothes) out of the washing machine
- 6 make a sandwich
- 7 empty the bin
- 8 do the ironing
- 9 cook lunch for the family
- 10 do the washing-up





















10

spotlight do + noun

These phrases are very common in spoken English: do the shopping, do the washing-up. do the housework, do the ironing

Be careful!

housework = cleaning the house

homework = work teachers give students to do after class

Complete the text.

Saturday is my day for doing the ▶ housework . First, I go to town and do the (1) _____. Then I come back, (2) _____ everything (3) ____ in the cupboards, and (4) _____ the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) ______ it, and then I (6) _____ a cup of tea. My sister usually helps me. She (7) _____ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) _____ the washing out when it's finished. I (9) _____ lunch, but afterwards, we do the (10) ______ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) _____.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

In your home ...

- 1 Who does the shopping? _____ 4 Who cleans the kitchen? ____
- 2 Who cooks the dinner?
- 3 Who does the washing-up? _______ 6 Who does the ironing? _____
- 5 Who empties the bin?



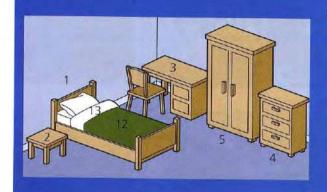
Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.

40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom and bathroom 60

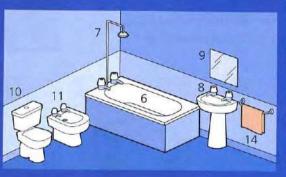
International student house

ur rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a single bed1, bedside table2. desk3 and chair, chest of drawers4, and wardrobe5



There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a bath6, shower7, washbasin8, mirror9, toilet10, and bidet11.

We provide blankets12, but students must bring their own sheets13 and towels14.



0	One word	is	different.	Which	one?
---	----------	----	------------	-------	------

- bedside table toilet wardrobe
- bath shower mirror
- wardrobe desk chest of drawers
- blanket desk chest of drawers
- 4 bed chest of drawers bidet
- 5 wardrobe toilet washbasin
- 6 towel blanket sheet
- Write in the missing letter.
 - ▶ dek desk
 - 1 beside table _____
 - 2 miror _____ 3 ath _____

 - 4 chest of drawes

- Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom. is different. You can wash in the other two.
- is different. You put clothes in the other two.
- is different. The other two are pieces of furniture.
- is different. The other two are in a bedroom.
- is different. The other two are in a bathroom.
 - is different. The other two are on a bed.
- 5 wasbasin _____ 10 seet _____
- 6 tolet twel____ 11
- wadrobe _____ 7 12 shoer _____
- 8 bide _____
- 9 blanke ____

ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.

In my bedroom, there's In my bathroom, there's

Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1-14.

B In the bathroom 60



You can also put on or wear



- Circle the correct word.
 - I wash/clean my teeth with toothpaste/a comb.
 - 1 I do/put on my hair with a razor/a brush.
 - 2 Do you have/do a bath every day?
 - 3 She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
 - 4 Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
 - 5 He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
 - 6 When you take off make-up you use tissues/a comb.
- Write a, an or nothing (–).
 - I don't use ____ make-up.

 I need ____ new comb.
 - 2 Do you want _____tissue?
 - 3 I never use _____perfume.
 - 4 I must buy _____ brush.

I **have a wash** after work.

spotlight

have + noun

Notice these phrases with have:

Do you have a shave every morning?

I **have a shower** every day. I don't **have a bath** very often.

- 5 I buy ____shampoo every week.
- 6 Have you got _____ electric razor?
- 7 I just use ____ soap.
- 8 I need _____ new toothbrush and _____ toothpaste.
- ABOUT YOU Tick (
 ✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

L	a i usually have a path.	5	For women:	
	b I usually have a shower.		a I often wear perfume.	
2	a I clean my teeth before breakfast.		b I don't wear perfume very much.	
	b I clean my teeth after breakfast.		a I usually wear make-up.	
3	a I wash my hair twice a week or less.		b I don't wear make-up very much.	
	b I wash my hair more than twice a week.	6	For men:	
4	a I usually use a brush on my hair. b I usually use a comb on my hair.		a I use an electric razor. b I don't use an electric razor.	

41 I can describe a living room 6



- 10 cushion
- 11 DVD player
- 12 lamp
- 13 armchair
- 14 coffee table
- 15 fireplace
- 16 floor
- 17 sofa
- 18 rug
- 19 carpet

An armchair, a sofa and a coffee table are furniture u, or pieces of furniture.

1	Look	at the	picture.	True or	false?	Write T	or F.
		44.0					

In the living room, there is only one...

- ▶ TV T
 3 cushion
 7 rug
 11 picture

 ▶ picture T
 4 carpet
 8 radiator
 12 wall

- 2 lamp _____ 6 fireplace _____ 10 sofa _____ 14 piece of furniture _____

1 window

2 light

4 wall

3 ceiling

5 curtains

picture

9 radiator

- 1 light _____ 5 curtain ____ 9 armchair ____ 13 DVD player ____
- Complete the words.
 - ▶ window
- 4 ___ iator
- 8 ___ ht
- 12 ____ place

- 1 ___ or
- 5 ____fee ___le
- 9 ___ tains

- 2 ___ pet 6 ___ ling
- 10 ____ hair

- 3 ___ hion
- 7 _____ves 11 __g
- ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.
 - 1 How many windows have you got in your living room?
 - 2 Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both?
 - 3 What have you got on the floor?
 - 4 What's on the walls?
 - 5 Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls?
 - 6 What furniture have you got?



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.

Review: Places

11014 2/

un	IT 34								
Com	plete the sentences.								
▶ N	loscow is in the west of Russia.	6	Paris is the			of F	ranc	e.	
	illan is in the of Italy.		The Nile is the						n the
	angkok is in the of Thailand.		world.						
	an Francisco is on the west and	8	Fujiyama is the	e hio	hest			i	in Japan
	ew York is on the east of the USA.		Bondi is a long						
4 C	hina is an (very big) country.		Brazil is						
	eneva is near the between witzerland and France.		and Carnival.						
Un	it 35								
1 W	rite the opposite.								
	north south 3 south-west	- ferfrebrus		6	a bu	sv sti	reet		
1	an old city 4 safe								
2	under a million 5 there's lots to	do		8	opin	ion			
2 Co	omplete the texts.								
A	Granada is quite a large town about 3	350	km south (1)			Ma	adrid	. It h	as a
	(2) of about 300,000 people. It's a								
	and a famous (4) called The Alhami								
В	New York is a big (6), which is (7)	***************************************	the	Atla	ntic co	ast.	lt's		
	(8) for a number of things: the (9)		of Li	bert	y, Tim	es (1	0)		
	and Central (11) It is a (12)	***************************************	city, with p	eop	le of n	nany	natio	onali	ties.
Un	it 36				A	D	E	٨	1
					A	R	T.	Α	
1 Co	omplete the crossword.		<u> </u>	1	Α				
	Part of a town, country or the world. area		2		A				
1	You see this between two hills.		3		A				
2	food is good for you.		L.	4	A				
3	You go on this on a river.			4	Α				. 24
4	A person who grows crops to sell.	ò	5	-	A				
5	Horses eat this.		<u></u>	6	Α				
6	A place where you walk between fields.			7	_				

7 A large area of water with land around it.

8 Not with other people.

2 C	omplete the crossword.		W	0	0	D	1						
-	A place with a lot of trees. wood		1		0		-	Î					
1	An animal you can ride.			0									
2	Farmers potatoes, rice, etc.	2		0									
3	Plants that farmers look after and then	3	7	0									
	sell for food.		4	13.57					1				
4	Control of the second of the s			0									
	other people.			50									
5	If yousomething, it is yours.		6	0								Ē	
6		de to	NA/DS	and a	itios								
1 Co	A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, keep A place with shops which is indoors is a second A shop where you buy newspapers, chocolar A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, and large shop which sells food, things for clear A shop where you get bread and cakes is a large where you buy books is a beautiful A shop where you buy meat is a beautiful A large shop where you can buy almost any second A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc.	etc. i etc. i aning b thing	etc. is s a c g, etc.	is a n	hbeds	s, etc	. is a	d	or a				
	omplete the crossword. The letters in th	ie gr	ey so	quar	es m	ake	a di	ffer	ent	wor	d.		
	where you buy books bookshop			B	0	0	K	S	H	0	P		
	wait in a line of people		51				1						
	buy the things you need: do the				2								7
	B easy and quick to use				2								
	like something more than another thing			3									
							4			Ħ			t
5	a shopping place outdoors where different	peop	le sell	İ									1
	you food, books, etc.							5					
6	you find these in a market					6							
	' the opposite of 'outdoors'		7										
	in a supermarket, you put things in a				8						1		
	trolley or a				Ü								
9) buy						9						
	where you pay for things in a big shop									1			
Th	ne word in the grey squares is												

Unit 38

	ere are some definition	ins.	Wildt die tile Wolds:
•	The room where you ta	lk ar	nd watch TV. living room
1			and have a shower.
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			m one floor to another floor.
7			e where there are trees and flowers.
8			flat or a house).
M	atch 1 – 8 with a – i.		
		a	floor
1			views
			village ✓
	The same of the sa		centre
5			door
	Tarihina i v		house
7	block	_	
	DIOCK	n	for two cars
8	town	h	for two cars room
8 ni	it 39 rite your answers.	i	room
8 ni w	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the	i nis	room
ni w	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cur	i nis ps in	room saucepan this or
wind 1	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cultive You wash clothes in this	i nis ps in	room saucepan this or
8 ni	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cultive You wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this.	i nis ps in	room saucepan this or
8 Ni	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quickles	i nis ps in ckly in	room saucepan this or
8 ni	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and curyou wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quice You put clean plates, curyou but clean plates, curyou to the second	i ps in kly in	room saucepan this or this this and saucers here
8 ni	it 39 rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quickly you put clean plates, cure You keep milk and cold	i inis	room saucepan this. or n this and saucers here as in this
8 Ni 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and curyou wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quickly you put clean plates, curyou keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this	i ps in kly in ps, a drink	room saucepan this or this n this and saucers here cs in this
Win 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this. You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quickly you put clean plates, cure You keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in	i innis	room saucepan this or this n this and saucers here cs in this
8 ni Wi	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cury You wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quick You put clean plates, cury you keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in mplete the sentences	i nis ps in kly in ps, a drink	room saucepan this. or n this and saucers here ss in this
8 Ni Wi	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this. You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quick You put clean plates, cure You keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in mplete the sentences	i inis	room saucepan this. or n this nd saucers here ss in this ng on the way home.
8 Ni Wi	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and curyou wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quick You put clean plates, curyou keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in mplete the sentences Do the shood the your plates and the shood the shood the shood the your put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in the shood the your plates the sentences the your plates the your plates the your plates the sentences the your plates the your pl	i inis	room saucepan this n this nd saucers here ss in this ng on the way home. the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
8 Ni Wi	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this. You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quice You put clean plates, cure You keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in the You cook meat slowly in the You cook meat slowly in the Society of the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You cook meat slowly in the Society of the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You cook meat slowly in the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You cook meat slowly in the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You cook meat slowly in the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You cook meat slowly in the Shoot Come home and the direction of the You wash plates and cure You wash clothes in this You put clean plates, cure You wash clothes in this You wash clothes in	i innis	room saucepan this or n this nd saucers here ss in this ng on the way home the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge. ashing in the machine, and it on.
8 ni Win 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 Co	rite your answers. You boil vegetables in the You wash plates and cury You wash clothes in this You put rubbish in this. You cook food very quick You put clean plates, cury You keep milk and cold You put ice cream in this You cook meat slowly in the you cook meat slowly in the shear the shear the shear the direct you minutes later,	i nis ps in kly in ps, a drink s this	room saucepan this n this nd saucers here ss in this ng on the way home. the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 M 1 2 3 4 5 6	1 The room where you w 2 The room where you co 3 The room where you sk 4 The room where you do 5 The place where you pu 6 The thing that takes you 7 The place outside your l 8 The place where you liv Match 1 – 8 with a – i. I quiet	1 The room where you wash a 2 The room where you cook f 3 The room where you sleep. 4 The room where you do wo 5 The place where you put the 6 The thing that takes you fro 7 The place outside your hous 8 The place where you live (a Match 1 – 8 with a – i. I quiet

Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

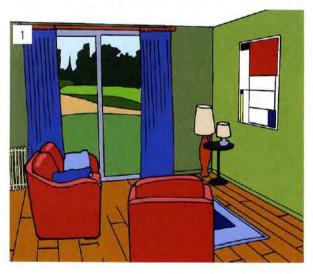
wardrobe shower	towel washbasin	toilet blan single bed		eet ch bath	nest of drawers bidet
1			2		

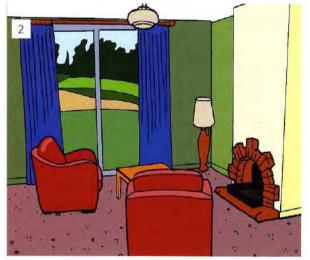
2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

	What do you use when you wash your ha	air? shampoo
1	What do you use when you make-u	ip?
2	What do you use when you a shave	?
3	What do you use when you your te	eth?
4	What do you use when you your ha	ir?
5	What do use when you a wash?	WHEN IN IS NOT THE OWNERS OF THE OWNER.

Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.



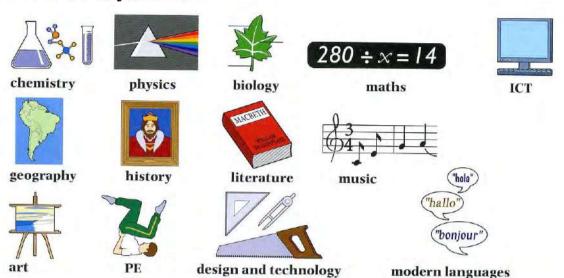


Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 h	asn	+	+	+																																																																							1	1	r	ł	2			2	4	١	_				,	2	4		-	6		ľ	A	l			1	C	i	i	2			L	Ľ	u	1	2	d	0.00	_	1	l	2	C		f)-	0	(5	5	5				ļ	a	(1))		(1	0
---	-----	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	---	---	---	--	---	---	--	---	---	---	--	--	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	---	---	---	---	---	---	------	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	----	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	---	---	--	---	---	---

1		6	
2		7	
3	NO DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE RESERVE OF THE PROPERTY	8	
4		9	
5		10	

42 | can talk about my school

A School subjects 60



Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school subjects.

ICT = information communication technology PE = physical education

RE = religious education

spotlight be good at something

If you are good at something, you do it well. If you are terrible at it, you do it very badly. I'm (quite) good at languages. I'm terrible at maths.

1000	182			
1	Comp	lete	the	words.

- ▶ a rt
- 3 b__l_g_
- 4 d_s_gn 5 ph_s_cs
- 2 q__gr_ph_

1 h_st_ry

- 6 m_th_
 - 7 m_s_c
- 8 |_t_r_t_r_
- Write the name of a school subject.
 - Beethoven, jazz, music
 - 1 football, gym
 - 2 computers _____
 - 3 Shakespeare _____
- 4 Spanish, German
 - 5 church, mosque, etc.
 - 6 CO₂, H₂O
 - 7 Picasso, Monet _____
- ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.
 - 1 At school, I'm/I was good at
 - 2 I'm/I was quite good at
 - 3 I'm/I was terrible at
 - 4 We don't/didn't study 5 The subject I like/liked most is/was
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.

B The education system 6

Education in England and Wales

You can ...

sta	art nursery school at 3	go to primary school at 5	go to secondary (state school or	school at 11 private schoo
			<u> </u>	
go	to university	stay at school until 18	leave scho	ol at 16
				1
		•		
		get a job	go to college	get a job
		G	ossary	
0		sta	art school go to a new	school for the
Som	e pupils (= schoolchildren up r a uniform .	to the age of 16)	rst time i te school a school wh	ere education is
_		fr	ee OPP private school	
5 F	out the story in order.	sta	y at school go to scho	ol for a period o
a	where he learnt to read and		me (also continue at so til up to that time ('I w	
b	He stayed there until he was	sixteen, 3	.00,' means 'after 3.00,	, I went away.')
C	When Tom was three,	col	lege place where you	can study after
d	and then he went to college		ou leave school ve school stop going t	o school
e		dary school get	t a job find a job	
f	He left college when he was	un	form special clothes the rar in a school	hat children
g			1 17 100 (2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
h		sp	otlight at (the age	of)
i	he went to primary school,	Ch	ildren go to school at 5	(or at the age
j	and got a job in a bank.	wh	5). = Children go to prinen they are five (years	imary school old).
6 c	omplete the questions, bu	t don't write answers.		
			ABOUT YOUR COU	NTRY
	At what age do children go t	o nursery school?	Alexander and Al	
1	When do they s	primary school?		
2	Do they usually wear a u			
3	When do pstar			
4	When can they I	school and		
	ga ioh?			

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.

5 Do they go to st_____schools, pr____

schools, or both?

C Exams 6

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn't work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren't fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed maths. My worst result was physics – I got a grade E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



Glossary

lesson a period of time (about an hour) in school when you are learning something

do homework u do work the teacher has given you to do at home (NOT homeworks)

work hard work a lot

result what you get in an exam, e.g. 80%, A, or 8/10 (the) worst superlative of bad opp (the) best superlative of good grade you get a grade (e.g. A or B) or a mark (e.g. 15/20) in an exam

do well be good at something and get better at it opp do badly

spotlight exam (examination)

An **exam** is an important test at the end of a period of study. **take an exam** = sit down and write your answers in the exam **pass an exam** = take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A or 85% **fail an exam** = take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D or 35%

e questions.
e c

- ► How many exams did he take? ______
- 1 Did he take an exam in chemistry?
- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail?
- 4 What was his best grade?
- 5 What was his worst grade? _____
- 6 What did he get in English?

Exam	Grade	A, B, C – pass
French	В	D, E – fail
IT	С	
Geography	D	
Biology	A	
English	C	
History	В	
Maths	Е	

Omplete the questions.

- ► Six out of ten isn't a very good mark . . .
- 1 I have to ______ an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you ______ your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very _____ in her German exam; she got a _____ A.
- 4 I got my exam ______ yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing ______ at school, and last week he _____ an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my _____ subject. I'm terrible at it.

ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

- 1 How long are/were your lessons at school?
- 2 Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age will/did you take important exams?
- 4 How many will/did you take?
- 5 Will/Did you pass all of them?

A A university degree 🕟

I started university two years ago. when I was nineteen, and I'm doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because - like many undergraduates - I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams. and last term I failed one and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago; fortunately I passed this time. When I've got my degree - a BA-I want to do research for a PhD.



Circle the correct word.

- She did an English course term.
- 1 I want to do/make a degree in maths.
- 2 A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.
- 3 I've got a BA/BSc in physics.

Glossary

do a degree study at university for three or four years course a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course

term a period of study, usually about ten weeks library a place where you can read and borrow books undergraduate a student doing a first degree (A graduate has a degree.)

write an essay do a piece of writing on a subject again one more time

fortunately We say fortunately when we give good news. opp unfortunately

BA/BSc Bachelor of Arts/Science MA/MSc Master of Arts/Science

do research study a subject for a long time to learn new information

PhD Doctor of Philosophy

spotlight

How long does it last?

To last is to continue for a period of time. How long does the film last? ~ Two hours. The Masters course lasts two years.

- 4 I study a lot in the library/bookshop.
- 5 A graduate/An undergraduate has a degree.
- 6 Fortunately/Unfortunately, I failed the exam.
- 7 You can do research before/after a degree.

Complete the dialogues.

•	How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
1	Have you got a? ~ Yes, a BSc.
2	Did she have to an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
3	Can you research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a
	Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
	Can he take the exam ? ~ Yes, next summer.
	How long does the course? ~ It's only one term.
A 1	TOUT YOUR COUNTY IN I

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1	How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry?
2	How long do you need to study for a Masters degree?
3	How long does a university term last?

4 How long does a school term last?

5 If you fail exams, can you always take them again?

B University subjects and people 60

	Degree subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	psychology	a psychologist
3	economics	an economist
4	law	a lawyer
5	politics	a politician
6	engineering	an engineer
7	architecture	an architect
8	computer science	an IT manager a software engineer
9	journalism	a journalist a reporter
10	business studies	a businessman/woman a manager



Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

-	He always wanted to be a lawyer .	LAW
	She wants to be a	MEDICINE
2	When did he become an ?	ENGINEERING
3	She's studying to become an	ARCHITECTURE
	Why does he want to be a?	PSYCHOLOGY
	She works as an	ECONOMICS
6	I don't know anyone who wants to be a	POLITICS
7	Is it difficult to become a?	JOURNALISM
8	I knew he'd become a	BUSINESS STUDIES

5 Complete the words. 'Degree subject' or 'person'? Write DS or P.

	jo <u>u</u> rnal <u>i</u> <u>s</u> m	DS	7	p_l_t_c_	4-44-4
1	l = wy = r)-to-endocate taken)	8	eng _ n r	e-manuscrim in the
2	ar it _ ct	***************************************	9	m = d = c = n =	na in in the territor
3	c = mp = t = sci = c =	Andrew consumers and the second	10	ec _ n _ m _ c _	
4	s tw_ r _ e _ g _ ne _ r	for an extended to the control of t	11	$IT m_n_g_r$	mand-man department
5	ps _ ch _ l _ g _	***************************************	12	r_p_rt	And was to be seen and
6	h s n se st d s				

Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?

44 I can name jobs 60

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...

spotlight

a/an with jobs

We use a/an when we say what people's jobs are. He's a builder. NOT He's builder.

She's a teacher and he's an engineer.



a police officer



a businessman/ businesswoman



a secretary



a dentist



a vet



a shop assistant



a nurse



a hairdresser



a soldier



a pilot



a builder



a teacher



a chef



a cleaner



a lorry driver also a train/bus/taxi driver

Word	Example	Meaning
self-employed	Are you self-employed?	working for yourself, not for a company
unemployed	I'm unemployed, but I'm looking for a job.	with no job, but wanting to work
retired	My grandfather is retired now.	= My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.
housewife or househusband	She's a housewife now, but she was a lawyer.	a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work
boss	Who's the boss in this company?	a person who tells people what to do in their jobs

	The most important person	in the	company is the boss	/hairdresser.	
1	A police officer/vet works v				
2	A shop assistant/dentist sel	ls thing	gs.		
3	A housewife/nurse works in	n a hos	spital.		
4	Retired people are usually y	oung/	old.		
5	An unemployed person has	/hasn'	t got a job.		
6	A businesswoman/soldier c	an be	self-employed.		
7	A businessman usually has		THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA		
8	A pilot/dentist looks after p				
9	A lorry driver/chef works in				
0	A builder/cleaner works our	idoors	a lot.		
C	orrect the spelling mistak	es.			
>	teecher teacher	5	polis officer	10	houswife
1	bisnessman	6	retaired	11	self-emploied
2	shop asistant	7	bilder	. 12	solder
3	airdresser	8	lory driver		
4	secretairy	9	cleener		
Co	omplete the sentences.				
>	Does she stay at home with				and the second section of the section o
1	Could she cut my hair? ~ Ye				
2	Does he work for Alitalia? ~	· Yes, ł	ne's		
3	Has she got a job? ~ No, sh	e's			
4	Does he tell people what to	do? ~	Yes, he's		transit per at past.
5	She's seventy – has she got	a job?	~ No, she's		***************************************
5	Does he work for other peo	ple? ~	No, he's		***************************************
7	Does she work with studen	ts? ~ Y	'es, she's		o no al familia
		rant?	Vac ha's		
3	Does he work in that restau	idill!	~ 1es, ne s		The state of the s
AE	BOUT YOU Think about y				
AE	BOUT YOU Think about yo the jobs below.	our fa	amily and people y	ou know. W	/rite their names if th
ΔE	BOUT YOU Think about yo the jobs below. a nurse <u>my friend Christa</u>	our fa	amily and people y		/rite their names if th
ΔE	BOUT YOU Think about you the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone	our fa	amily and people y	ou know. W	Vrite their names if th
de	BOUT YOU Think about you the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone a soldier Mr. Rosakis	our fa	amily and people y 5 _a vet6	someone w	Vrite their names if th
A E	BOUT YOU Think about yo the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone a soldier Mr Rosakis a secretary	our fa	amily and people y 5 a vet. 6 7	someone w a teacher a pilot	Vrite their names if th
All do	BOUT YOU Think about you the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone a soldier Mr Rosakis a secretary a chef	our fa	amily and people y 5 6 7 8	someone w a teacher a pilot	Vrite their names if th
Ald do	BOUT YOU Think about yo the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone a soldier Mr Rosakis a secretary a chef a hairdresser	our fa	amily and people y 5 6 7 8	someone w a teacher a pilot a dentist	Vrite their names if th
Aldo	BOUT YOU Think about you the jobs below. a nurse my friend Christa a vet I don't know anyone a soldier Mr Rosakis a secretary a chef	our fa	amily and people y 5 6 7 8	someone w a teacher a pilot a dentist a businessm	/rite their names if th

Circle the correct answer.

45 I can describe a job Do Unit 44 first

Where does he work?	\ 0	_
He works in an o	office a factory	a hospital
Who does she work for?		
She works for	a car company , e.g. Toyota an airline , e.g. Cathay Pacific	
What hours does he work?		Glossary
He's got	a full-time job, e.g. 40 hours a we a part-time job, e.g. 15 hours a we	earn receive money for the work that you do ek salary money you receive every
He works	long hours, e.g. 12 hours a day from nine to five	month for the work that you do wages money you receive every
How much does she earn?		week for the work that you do low If you earn low wages, you
	y much. He gets low wages.	
office an America	Thousa day	work for
office an America long hours 🗸 earr	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto	work for
office an America long hours ✓ earr ► He works long hours	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto 6 Where o	work for bry does he earn does
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours 1 She works ten	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto 6 Where of 7 She work	work for ory does he earn does
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours 1 She works ten 2 I work in	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto 6 Where of 7 She wor 8 She doe	work for ory does he earn does ks for sn't
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where of the control of the con	work for ory does he earn does cks for sn't
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where c . 7 She wor . 8 She doe . 9 It's a ful	work for ory does he earn does ks for sn't
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text.	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where of the control of the con	work for ory does he earn does cks for sn't l-time
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an He works in an How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where conditions . 7 She work 8 She doe 9 It's a ful 10 I work for ? cal hospital . She only wo	work for ory does he earn does
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo-about 15 hours (2)	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where compared to the six a factor . 7 She work . 8 She doe . 9 It's a full . 7 The she work . 9 It's a full . 9 The she work for the she she she she she she she she she s	work for bry does he earn does ks for sn't l-time rom -time 3)much money
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where of . 7 She work 8 She doe ? 9 It's a ful ? 10 I work for ? cal hospital . She only wo week – and she doesn't (contains the she wages.	work for ory does he earn doesks forsn'ttimetime 3) much money Her husband is a doctor, and he
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5)	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a factor . 6 Where of the control of the co	work for bry does he earn does ks for l-time rom trks (1)
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5)	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a facto . 6 Where of . 7 She work 8 She doe ? 9 It's a ful ? 10 I work for ? cal hospital . She only wo week – and she doesn't (contains the she wages.	work for bry does he earn does ks for l-time rom trks (1)
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5) about \$90,000 a (7)	n airline she work hours a day namuch job ten to six a factor of the following a factor of the following and the followi	work for ory does he earn does
office an America long hours ✓ earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5) about \$90,000 a (7) ABOUT YOU If you have someone who has a job	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a factor . 6 Where of . 7 She work 8 She doe ? 9 It's a ful ? 10 I work ful ? cal hospital . She only wo week — and she doesn't (in the she wages.) — sometimes 14 hours a (6) — which is a very high (8) — e a job, write answers to the questor.	work for ory does he earn does cks for csn't l-time rom rks (1) rks (1) -time 3) much money Her husband is a doctor, and he he earns in our country. tions. If you don't, ask
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lotal about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5) about \$90,000 a (7) ABOUT YOU If you have someone who has a job 1 What's your job?	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a factor . 6 Where control . 7 She work 8 She doe . 9 It's a full . 10 I work for . 7 She work . 8 She doe . 9 It's a full . 9 It's a fu	work for ory does he earn does ks for sn't l-time rom works (1) the much money Her husband is a doctor, and he he earns in our country. tions. If you don't, ask
office an America long hours earn He works long hours She works ten I work in He works in an Who do you How much Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our lo about 15 hours (2) Nurses in our country gener works very long (5) about \$90,000 a (7) ABOUT YOU If you have someone who has a job What's your job? Who do you work for?	n airline she work hours a day n much job ten to six a factor . 6 Where of . 7 She work 8 She doe ? 9 It's a ful ? 10 I work ful ? cal hospital . She only wo week — and she doesn't (in the she wages.) — sometimes 14 hours a (6) — which is a very high (8) — e a job, write answers to the questor.	work for ory does he earn does

B What do you have to do? 6.



Daniel Alessi, architect

I design buildings1, but I also have to:

- meet² clients and discuss problems with them
- · go to meetings3 with colleagues
- write reports

I spend a lot of time talking to people.

Eliane Sotano, secretary

I only work part-time now. I have to:

- · make phone calls4
- · send letters, faxes and emails
- · organize meetings for my boss
- type⁵ reports

I spend a lot of time answering the phone!

spotlight Spend time doing something

Spend time means to do something for a period of time: I **spend a lot of time** work**ing** and travell**ing**. I **spent** a week writing the report.

- There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.
 - ► I spent a day to meet clients. meeting
 - 1 He does a lot of phone calls.
 - 2 I have a meet this afternoon.
 - 3 She spends a lot of time type.
 - 4 She designs offices.
 - 5 Could you organizate a meeting?
 - 6 I wrote the report last night.
 - 7 We discussed about our problems.
 - 8 I answered to the phone.

Glossary

have to do something must do something

client a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help

discuss something talk about something NOT discuss about something

colleague a person who works with you report a piece of writing giving

information about work you have done **send** You write a letter, then you **send** it to the person.

organize If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.

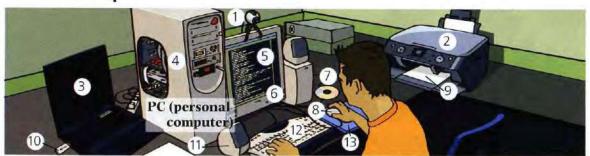
answer the phone pick up the phone when it rings and speak

6 Complete the text.

I have a really intere	sting new job in the office of a language so	chool. It's a ▶ full-time
job and I work from	nine to five. I (1)new	students when they arrive at the
school, and of cours	se, I (2) the phone and	(3)letters and
emails. I (4)	a lot of time (5)	phone calls to help students
who don't speak m	uch English. I really like my other (6)	in the office – they're
very friendly, and if	I have any problems we can (7)	them. I also
(8)	meetings for my boss with important (9) from other
countries. Sometime	es, I (10) to go to meet	ings with her. It's a nice place to work

46 I can talk about using a computer

A The computer 60



- 1 webcam
- 2 printer
- 3 laptop
- 4 hard drive
- 5 screen
- monitor
- 7 disk
- 8 mouse
- 9 hard copy/printout
- 10 memory stick
- speaker
- 12 keyboard
- 13 mouse mat

spotlight keep

Keep means 'to put something in a place so that you know where it is'. Where do you keep your passport? ~ I keep it in a box under the bed.

-			
60	Correct the	spelling	mistakes
		Shemma	mocune.

- hard copie hard copy
- 1 screan
- 2 maus _____
- 3 personal commuter 4 memory stik

- 5 moniter
- 6 keybord ______
- 7 disque _____
- 8 webcame

Complete the sentences.

- You type information using the keyboard .
- 1 You listen to music using the _____.
- 2 You get _____ using the printer.
- 3 The information in your computer is on the
- 4 A small computer you can carry is called a ______.
- 5 You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a

_____ or a _____.

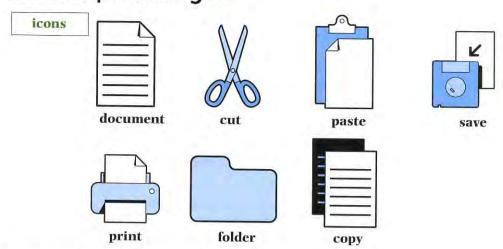
- 6 You move the _____ with your hand.
- 8 You read your emails on the _____.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it?
- 2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
- 3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it?
- 4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for?
- Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.



B Word processing 60



- 1 I opened a new document and typed a letter.
- 2 I cut a sentence from the beginning of the letter.
- 3 I moved it to the end. (I clicked on the 'paste' icon.)
- 4 I saved the document in my 'letters' folder.
- 5 I printed it out. or I did a printout.
- 6 I made a backup copy on a disk.

Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

- ► You type __d a a paper copy of your letter.
- 1 You open _____ b a backup copy.
- 2 You print out _____ c the letter you typed in a folder.
- 3 You cut ____ d your letter or report. ✓
- 4 You click on _____ e a word or sentence from your document.
- 5 You make _____ f a sentence to a different place.
- 6 You move _____ g a new document.
- 7 You save ____ h an icon.

Glossary

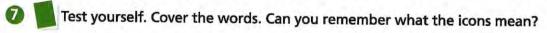
beginning the first part of something ore end (The middle is between the beginning and the end.) move something take something and put it in another place click on something



a backup copy a copy of a document or folder that you can use if you lose the first one (You make a backup copy.)

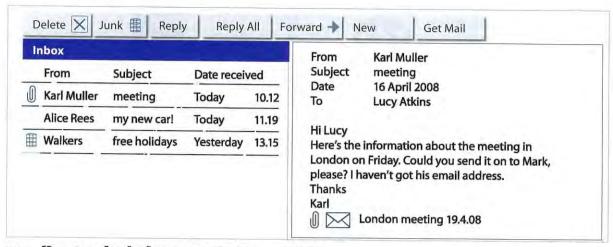
6 Complete the sentences.

- ► Which folder did you __save ____ the document in?
- 1 She _____ on the copy icon.
- 2 You can write 'Hello' at the ______ of an email, and 'best wishes' at the
- 3 I always ______ a backup copy of my work.
- 4 I typed a letter to my boss and then I ______ a printout.
- 5 My letter wasn't very interesting, so I ______ a few sentences.
- 6 Did you _____ your work in the correct folder?
- 7 When you ______ a new document, you can start writing.
- 8 The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the _____ part was terrible.



47 I can use email and the internet

A Email 6



Have you **checked your emails** this morning?

Yes, Karl **sent** me an email with an **attachment**, and I have to **forward** it **to** Mark.

And I **got** an email **from** Alice about her new car. I'll **reply to** it later.

True or false? Write	e T	or	F.
----------------------	-----	----	----

	There are two messages in Lucy's inboxF
1	Lucy received two junk mail messages.
	Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark.
3	There's an attachment with Alice's email.
4	Lucy sent Karl an email.
5	Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message.
6	Lucy will reply to Walkers' email.
	Lucy got an email from Karl.
	Karl has got Mark's email address.

Glossary

check your emails look and see if you have any email messages send PT sent If you send someone an email, you write it, and then send it to the person.

get an email If someone sends you an email, you get it. (also receive) reply to an email write an answer to a message and send it

One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

- I have to the junk mail. delete
 I must reply Jean's email.
 Did you my message?
 I received an from Li today.
 - 4 Have you checked your?
 - 5 Forward the attachment John.
 - 6 She Tia an email yesterday.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you send emails?2 Who do you send them to?
- 3 What kind of junk mail do you receive? ______
- 4 Do people send you attachments? What's in them?

 5 Do you always reply to emails quickly?

B The internet 60

Questions	Answers	ABOUT YOU
What's your email address?	It's louella@yahoo.co.uk	1
Do you buy things on the internet?	Yes, I buy books.	2
What's a web address for news in your country?	It's www.bbc.co.uk/news	3
Which websites do you visit most?	eBay and MySpace.	4
Have you got broadband?	Yes, it's very fast.	5
How often do you go online ?	I use the internet every evening.	6
Do you visit chatrooms?	Yes, I often chat online.	7
Do you download music onto your computer?	Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.	8
Which search engines do you use?	I use Google and Yahoo.	9

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

-	online	on the internet	S
1	web address	email address	
2	visit a website	go to a website	
3	a search engine	a website	
4	fast	quick	
5	MP3 player	CD player	
6	download songs	copy songs from the internet	
7	go online	use the internet	
8	visit a chatroom	chat online	
9	broadband	download	
10	data	computer information	

Complete the sentences.

-	Have you got an MP3 player	?
1	We use different	engines.
2	It's not very expensive to	music from the internet.
3	Do you spend a lot of time	the internet?
4	I'd like to get	because my internet connection is very slow.
5	My favourite	is eBay.
6	You can	websites or chatrooms.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the 'about you' column in the table, or ask another student the questions.

Glossary

on the internet (NOT on internet)
web address = internet address
broadband With a broadband
connection, you can get
information from the internet
very fast.

fast (also quick) opp slow (150 kph for cars is fast; 20 kph is slow.) online on the internet chatroom a place on the internet

where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)

download If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)

MP3 player a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod

Review: Study and work

Unit 42

1 0			chool subjects.				
-	maths	The state of the s					
1	b		6	a			
2	h		7	g			
3			8	C		ion.	
4	p	Managery (Principle Street Co.	9	d		and t	
5	m	Market Constitution of the	10	m			
2 N	latch 1 – 9 wit	:h a – j.					
-	start	a	at PE				
1	take	b	a uniform				
2	be good	с	secondary school 🗸				
3	leave	d	at school until 18				
4	go	е	to school				
5	work	f	a job				
6	wear	g	university				
7	get	h	homework				
8	do	i	hard				
9	stay	j	an exam				
3 C	omplete the d	ialogues with	one word.				
	Did he stay on	at school? ~ No	o, he left	at 16.			
1			~ No, I did				
2			ne? ~ No, she				
3			ool. ~ That's right, he			sc	thool
4			No, I'm				
5			school? ~ No, she's or				school
6			o! He's the				
Un	it 43						
			d in the correct fo				
La	st month my sis	ter started unive	ersity. She's <u>doing</u>		a degree	in compute	er
(1))	. The cour	se (2)	three	years, and	there are th	ree ten-week
(3)	in every ye	ear. She has to (4)		a lot	of essays a	nd pass exams
If.	she fails them, s	he has to take th	nem (5)	, an	nd then wait	t for the res	ults. If she
pa	sses her final ex	ams, she'll get h	ner (6)	If sh	ne does wel	l, after that	she can do
(7)	to get a (8	3)				

2 Complete the words in the table.

People	Subjects	Phrases
journalisŧ	medic	do resea
undergradu	econom	do a deg
engin	architect	write an es
law	bus studies	
politic	polit	

Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

pilot dentist retired nurse businessman/businesswoman builder police officer unemployed vet soldier hairdresser shop assistant ▶ You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier, a builder, or a shop assistant. 1 You probably have to go to university to be ______ 2 You need to be good with your hands to be ______ 3 You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be _____ 4 You probably have a lot of free time if you are _____ 5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are _______ 6 You work in an office most of the time if you are _____

Unit 45

1 Match 1 - 9 with a - j.

writeb a the phone send _____ b reports 🗸 2 make problems C 3 answer _____ d clients 4 organize e buildings 5 discuss f long hours 6 work for _____ g meetings 7 design h phone calls 8 meet _____ a computer company 9 work emails

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

2	Comp	lete	the	conversation.
-				COLLACT SUCIOIT.

What's your ▶ _iob ? ~ I work (1) _____ an office.

Do you work long hours? ~ No, it's part-_____ (2).

How many hours is that? ~ Three hours (3) _____ day.

And what do you have to do? ~ I (4) _____ a lot of time sending emails.

Do you get a good salary? ~ No, I don't (5) _____ very much.

What about the people you work with? ~ Oh, my (6) _____ are very nice.

Unit 46

1 Complete the words and phrases.

- Do you need hard ______?

 Did you bring your lap______?

 It's a nice key______.

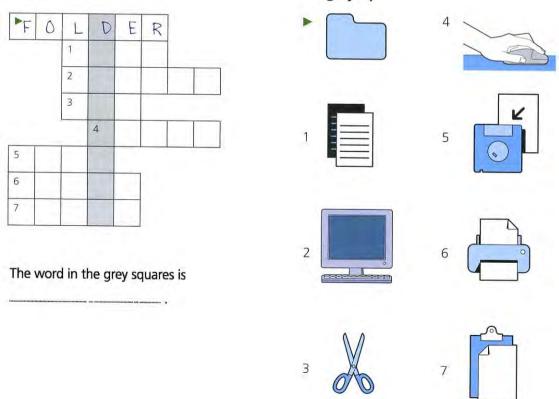
 I need a new mouse ______.

 What's a memory______?

 Did you make a back______ copy?

 The information is on the hard ______.
- 7 Can you do a print_____, please? 8 Have you got a _____cam?

2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



Unit 47

1 Fin	d eiaht	more	words	or	phrases	in	the	circle.
-------	---------	------	-------	----	---------	----	-----	---------

MP3 player	

2 Complete the crossword.

				₽R	Ε	P	L	Y	
1					Μ				
	2				А				
		3			1				
			4		L				
				5	Α				
	18	6			D				
	7				D				
	8				R				
		9			Е				
				10	S				
			11		S				

>	I must reply	to her email.
1	Send it as an	
2	Did you get my	7
3	Do you often go	7
4	I always	junk mail.
5	My computer is very	
6	How many emails do you.	······································
7	Have you got	?
8	I spend hours on the	
9	Did you	my email?
10	He doesn't	email very much
11	Do you often	chatrooms?

chat
broad down
web player ✓ on
band engine in
search box junk
load room line
site mail
MP3 ✓

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

48 I can say what I like

A Love it or hate it? 6 I love football. Hike it. I think it's OK. I don't like it. I really like it. I quite like it. I don't like it very much. I hate football. spotlight like/love/hate + -ing After like, love, and hate, use a noun, a pronoun, or -ing form. football. I like/love/hate playing football. I like/love/hate learning English. Who likes it more? A or B? B likes coffee more. A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee. (A likes coffee less.) 1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK. likes studying less. 2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate. _____likes chocolate more. 3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK. likes sport more. 4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping. likes shopping less. 5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much. likes pop music less. 6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea. ____likes tea more. Correct the mistakes. Do you like watching tennis? Do you like watch tennis? 1 I hate it chocolate. 2 They don't like to doing homework very much. 3 He doesn't like very much speaking English. 4 I like quite shopping. 5 She doesn't like drive. 6 I think tennis OK. 7 I like really going out with friends. 8 She loves watch sport. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers. I _____ cleaning the house. I _____watching TV. 6 I _____ writing emails. 2 | studying English. I _____ talking on the phone. 3 I _____ driving. 4 I _____shopping for clothes. 8 I _____ going to the cinema.

B It's my favourite thing 6.

meetpeopleweb.com

Name Mirko Zitec

Work I work for a TV company.

It's a wonderful job - I love it.

Study I'm learning to play the guitar.

It's good fun and my teacher's fantastic.

Sports My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also

enjoy playing football.

TV/cinema I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but I'm **interested** in old films from the

1960s. I **prefer** old films **to** modern

ones, in fact.

Music

I'm very keen on jazz; I go to a club

every Friday.

Glossary

wonderful/fantastic very good

fun If something is fun it makes you happy. favourite Your favourite thing or person is the one you like most.

enjoy doing something If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)

boring opp interesting

prefer ... to ... like someone or something
more than another person or thing

be keen on something like or be interested in something

spotlight

interesting/interested

I think modern art is interesting means 'I'm interested in modern art.'
NOT I'm interesting in modern art.

Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1		the party	city. 🗸	
2	l'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	Му	enjoy	film is 'Tootsie'.	
4	She	fantastic	on tennis?	
5	He's a	a wonderful 🗸	in politics.	
6	Was	you keen	programme.	
7	lt's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Are	a boring	to writing.	

Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

	interesting	fun	interested	keen	enjoy	favourite	prefer	enjoyable 🗸
			to -1.1			ABOUT	YOU	
	Do you thin			?		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
1	Is learning E	nglish go	ood		?	-		
2	Do you		meat t	o fish?				
3	What's your		ci	ty?				
4	Are you		in spo	ort?		***************************************		
5	Are you		on cla		*****			
6	Do you		walkin	g in the c	ountryside	?		
7	Do you thin	k history	is		,			

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.

49 I can talk about sport

A Games 60

game	place	equipment = special things you need for the game	score = the number of points or goals you have
football	pitch	goal football	1-0 one nil 2-1 two one or two goals to one
rugby	pitch	rugby ball	10-6 ten six or ten points to six
ice hockey	rink	goal stick puck	3–2 three two or three goals to two
volleyball	court	net	15–10 fifteen points to ten
tennis	court	net racket tennis ball	6-3 six three or six games to three $6-2$ is one set in tennis
basketball	court	basket	60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four

0	Combine words to	find	games,	places,	equipment	and scores.
---	------------------	------	--------	---------	-----------	-------------

•	volley 🗸	pitch	tennis	ice	▶ volleyball	
	football	ball 🗸	basket	nil		
	racket	three	hockey	ball		

True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.

-	You score goals in basketball.	F	You score points in basketball.
1	Sticks and rackets are equipment.		
2	You have a net in tennis and volleyball.		
3	You score points in ice hockey.	tormanament	
4	You play football on a court.	***************************************	
5	You play ice hockey with rackets.		
6	You play volleyball on a court.		
7	You score points in rugby.		
8	You play rughy with a puck		

Complete the sentences.

-	I need to get a new tennis.	racket .	
1	I watched a fantastic	of ice hockey on TV last night.	
		are usually very tall.	
		to four to Federer in the second	
4	What was the football	? ~ It was three	(3-0)
	The football	is port to the tenni-	,- ,-

B Football 6

ITALY	
Cagliari 1	Torino 1
Lazio 3	Livorno 1
Palermo 3	AS Roma 3
Sampdoria 1	Parma 2
Treviso 1	Fiorentina 3
Played Friday:	
AC Milan 1	Inter Milan 0

League	table	
	W 2	

	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
AC Milan	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, AC Milan won their important match against Inter Milan. Khaladze scored the only goal in the 70th minute. This means they are still top of the table but now lead Inter by five points. On Saturday, Cagliari could

only **draw** their match with Torino. At Palermo, Roma were leading 3 - 0 at **half-time**, but Palermo came back in the **second half** to make the **final score** 3 - 3. Lazio **beat** Livorno 3 - 1, while Treviso **lost** 3 - 1 **to** Fiorentina

4 Correct the bold words.

- Shevchenko did two goals, scored
- 1 Lazio have a play next Saturday.
- 2 Inter are playing with Parma.
- 3 AC Milan are number one of the table.
- 4 Treviso lost 3 1 with Fiorentina.
- 5 Parma beated Sampdoria.
- 6 Milan win their game last week.
- 7 Palermo draw with AS Roma.
- 8 Lazio won Livorno 3 1.

6 Complete the sentences.

- ► They scored in the second half
- 1 It's an important ______ next week.
- 2 We are playing ______ Valencia.
- 3 Seville ______1 2 to Barcelona.
- 4 Bilbao ______ 2 2 _____ Villareal.
- 5 It was 0 0 at half-_____.
- 6 On Sunday Espanyol _____ Real Betis 2 1.
- 7 Ronaldinho _____ the goal.
- 8 We _____ our last match 4 1.
- 9 They were _____1 0 at half-time.
- 10 What was the final _____?

Glossary

match a game between two teams, e.g. Parma and Lazio

against One player or team plays against another player or team.

score get a goal or points in a

top of the table/league number one in the table/league

lead be in front of others in a game or sport

half-time a period of rest between the first and second half

first half/second half The game is in two halves. (Each half is 45 minutes long.)

final score the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 3-2

spotlight Irregular verbs

win PT won

We won 2 – 1 against Sampdoria.

beat someone PT beat

We **beat** Sampdoria 2-1.

draw with someone PT drew

We drew 3-3 with Roma.

We lost 1 – O to Milan.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

▶ Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1—0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.

50 I can talk about my free time

A Common activities 6

What do you do in your free time?

I go	I play	I do some I do (quite) a lot of	
camping	cards	travelling	I collect things (e.g. stamps).
skiing fishing	table tennis	flower arranging	I watch TV and DVDs.
to the cinema	computer games	cooking	I spend time with friends.
to the gym	the guitar	drawing and painting	I make my own clothes.

- Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?
 - watch TV inside
 - ▶ go to the gym another place
 - 1 go fishing
 - 2 do a lot of cooking
 - 3 do flower arranging
- 4 do some drawing _____
- 5 go camping
- 6 play cards _____
- 7 do a lot of travelling
- 8 play computer games _____
- 2 Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.
 - ► I never play cards.
 - 1 Do you often _____ to the cinema?
 - 2 My brother _____ old clocks.
 - 3 I'd like to _____ the guitar.
 - 4 She _____ a lot of cooking.
- 5 Do you _____ table tennis?
- 6 Do you _____ time with your family?
- 7 They _____ skiing every February.
- 8 She _____ quite a lot of travelling in spring.
- 9 She _____ all her own dresses.
- ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (✗) by the ones you aren't interested in.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing, and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking, and collecting different things.



Alexandra: "I like listening to rock and classical music. I also

like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is **shooting** (you can see me in the

photo), and I'm quite good at it."

Veronica: "I have many hobbies: cooking, reading, drawing,

and **singing** in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It's wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper."

Dima: "I play the guitar, and I can sing Russian and English

songs. I'm good at swimming, snowboarding and

skiing. I also like travelling very much."

Glossary

hobby PLURAL hobbies an activity that you like doing in your free time

gardening working in your garden

repair cars make cars work when they have a problem

various (places) a number of different (places)

club a group of people who do something together

popular If something is popular, many people like it.

musical instrument a thing used for playing music, e.g. a guitar

listen to something

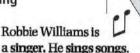


classical music e.g. music by Bach and Mozart (NOT classic music)

read



sing



True or false? Correct the false sentences.

	Alexandra doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
1	Older people enjoy gardening.
2	Playing a musical instrument isn't popular in Russia.
3	Dima plays the piano.
4	Veronica's favourite hobby is reading.
6	Veronica's quite good at shooting.
7	Veronica dances in the shower.
8	Younger people like repairing cars.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1	What's your favourite hobby?
2	What hobbies are popular with older people?

3 What hobbies are popular with younger people?

6 Are you a good singer? ______

A Pop and rock 60

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar, Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Helder, who is the drummer and also sings.



What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.

- ► There are four five people in the band.
- They first became well known in 2004/2005.
- 2 People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
- 3 Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
- 4 Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
- 5 Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
- 6 Matthew Helder plays the guitar/drums.

Complete the sentences.

	Paul McCartney plays the guitar	
1	Another word for a band is a	
2	The most important singer is thesinger.	
3	Someone who plays the drums is the	
4	A CD with one song on it is a	
5	A CD with about ten songs on it is an	
6	The is the list of singles that sell most in a wee	ek.
7	The Beatles first became well in the 1960s.	

Glossary

band e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also group) well known SYN famous be able to If you are able to do something, you can do it. OPP unable download music copy music from the internet onto a computer, MP3 player, etc. single one song on a CD number 1 the single that sells the most in one week the singles chart the list of pop music singles that sell the most in one week album a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD lead singer the most important singer

3	ABOUT	YOU	Write	vour	answers	or	ask	another	stude	ent
	110001	100	AALICC	your	ulis vv Cl 3		UJI	anounci	Jeau	-111

You can _____ music from the internet.

Who's your favourite group?

	Title 5 your lavourite group.
2	Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play?
3	When did they first become well known?
4	What's the name of one of their singles?

5 What's the name of one of their albums? 6 What's your favourite song by this band?

B Classical music 60



A concert of classical music.



Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra. by Mozart.



Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto



Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, Opera singer Cecilia playing one of Beethoven's piano sonatas.



Bartoli, performing in Cosi Fan Tutte.



Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

spotlight	by
a song by (F Williams), a by (Mozart by (Picasso	a symphony), a painting), a film by
	We say a bo a song by (F Williams), by (Mozart

4	Co	orrect the spelling mistak	es.						
	•	violinista <u>violinist</u>	3	clasical	6	composor			
	1	conducter	4	conciert	7	performe			
	2	orchestre	5	celo	8	pianiste			
6	Co	omplete the sentences.							
	•	Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is <u>classical</u> music.							
	1	A large group of people who play classical music together is called an							
	2	The person who stands in front of them is the							
	3	A person who plays the piano is a							
	4	A person who plays the violin is a							
	5	A person who plays the cello is a							
	6	A person who sings opera is an							
	7	A person who writes music is a							
	8	'Carmen' is an opera		Bizet.					
	9	Last night we went to a class	sical r	nusic	. Placid	o Domingo was			

Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?

with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

A Describing films 60



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



A action film is exciting.



A horror film is frightening.



A cartoon is often funny.

spotlight	What kind of?
What kind ~ It's a thril	of film is it?

What kind of music do you like? ~ Rock music.

- Make kinds of film from the letters.
 - rwa milf war film
 - 1 rillerht 2 moyecd
 - 3 tanico ifml
- 4 onacrot
- vole rosty
- 6 rohror limf

- Match 1-5 with a-f.
 - ▶ an exciting d a war film
 - 1 a romantic b comedy
 - 2 a frightening ____ c love story
 - d action film /
 - 3 a violent
 - e thriller
 - 4 a funny
 - 5 an exciting ____ f horror film

Write down new words in a notebook.

Write one adjective to describe each picture.









3



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.

B What's on? 60



5 Who's the director?

6 What's it about?

Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.

- M What's on at the cinema?
- E There's a film on called Rumor Has It.
- M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
- E It's a romantic comedy. It's about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It's had good reviews.
- M OK. Who's in it?
- E Er, it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
- M Oh, I like Kevin Costner he's a good actor. Who's the director?
- E Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally.
- M Right. And where's it on?
- E The Odeon.
- M OK. Let's go and see it.

Glossary

What's on? = 'What film can we see?'

cinema a place where you see films

movie a film

It's about ... = The subject is ...

review an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio. TV or internet

star be one of the main actors in a film

(The person is a star.)

actor e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston

(A female actor can also be called an actress.)

director person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg

Where's it on? = 'Where can we see it?'

see a film at the cinema (NOT watch a film at the cinema)

A <u>What</u> 's on at the cinema? B A film called <i>The Constant Gardener</i> . A Oh, what (1) of film is it?	B It (5) Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
B It's a thriller. A What's it (2)? B I'm not sure, but it's had good (3) A Oh, and who's (4) it?	A They're both good (6)? Who's the (7)? B A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles. A OK. And where's it (8) B At the ABC cinema. A Let's go and (9) it.
ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask anot 1 What kind of films do you like? 2 What was the last film you saw?	B Fine.

Where was it on?

Who are the stars of the film?

53 I can talk about the media

A What is the media? 60

Word	Example	Meaning
media	The media often write about famous people.	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	Do you read women's magazines ?	Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>Hola</i> .
opinion	What's your opinion of the events?	what you think about something
report	Journalists report the news from all over the world.	give information on the news; the person is a reporter (= journalist)
event	The Olympic Games is a very big event.	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	Fortunately, nobody died in the accident.	stop living
war	The two countries were at war for ten years.	If a country is at war , it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is peace .
disaster	The tsunami was a terrible disaster.	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (plural celebrities)	There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.	famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (also advert)	There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.	text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something

Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

-	What do the media say about him?	What does the advert say about him?	D
1	There is peace between the two countries.	There is war between the two countries.	
2	What's your opinion of the news?	What do you think of the news?	
3	It was a great event.	It was a great advertisement.	
4	He is reporting from Seoul.	He is giving the news from Seoul.	
5	I read it in an article.	I read it in an advertisement.	
6	She's a TV celebrity.	She's on TV a lot.	
7	Where did he live?	Where did he die?	

2	Complete the	text with	words	from	the	table	in	the	correct	form
---	--------------	-----------	-------	------	-----	-------	----	-----	---------	------

The media	is TV, radio, newspapers, (1)	, and the internet. The media
(2)	on important (3) from around	d the world; for example,
(4)	like the Asian tsunami, or (5)	between different countries. As well as
reporting the nev	vs, the media give their (6) of	events round the world. And reporters
also like to write	about (7) such as Tom Cruise	and Angelina Jolie.

3 Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.

B Your media 60

	1/10	odio guactionnaira		Glossary
	1 2 3 4	Why do you read a newspaper? a to find out what has happened b because it has interesting articles c for the sports results d for the business news What do you watch on TV? a the news b soaps c films d nothing much What do you listen to on the radio? a the news b music programmes c the weather forecast d nothing much Do you believe what you read or hear in the news? a yes, all of it		newspaper e.g. The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde (also paper) find out get information or facts happen take place, e.g. 'We don't know what wi happen tomorrow.' article a piece of writing in a paper or magazine on TV/on the radio NOT in TV/in the radio, but in the paper the news a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world soap a story on TV two or three times a week about the lives and problems of a group of peopl nothing much nothing important programme a TV or radio show, e.g. the news weather forecast a description of the weather for the next few days believe think that something is true all = 100%, most = 80 - 95%, some = 30 - 50%, none = 0%
	-1	b yes, most of it c yes, some of it d no, none of it		We watch TV, but we see or watch a programme. We listen to the radio, but we hear or lister to a programme.
1	Ci	ircle the correct answer.		
		6 791 61	5	See the programme/article on TV.
	1	Read an article on/in the paper.	6	Did you hear —/to the sports results?
	2	Let's listen to the/a news.	7	I heard all —/of it on/in the radio.
	3	Watch a programme in/on TV.	8	Don't believe/listen what you see.
	4	Find -/out what has happened.	9	I watched most –/of it.
5	C	omplete the dialogues.		
	•	I always read a paper at the week	end	l. ~ But do you read <u>all</u> of it?
	1	Did you TV last night? ~ Yes,	1	a programme about dogs.
	2	I read the story but I don't it'	's tru	ue. ~ No, of it is true. It's all false.
	3	Have you heard the? ~ No, v	wha	t's?
	4			g? ~ Yes, I the 8 o'clock news.
	5	What's in the this morning?		
	6	Have you seen the weather		
	7	What did you on TV? ~ Oh,	noth	ning

6 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.

Review: Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

1 🙂	2 🙂	3	4 ::	5 :
I really like it.			I think it's quite boring.	

I really like it. <

I think it's quite boring. 🗸

I love it.

I think it's OK.

I really hate it.

It's my favourite thing.

I quite enjoy it.

I'm not very keen on it.

I don't like it very much.

It's wonderful.

I think it's fantastic.

I'm not very interested in it.

It's quite enjoyable.

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Who is does your favourite actor?
- 1 My mother isn't interested/interesting in tennis.
- 2 Our teacher is very keen in/on classical music.
- 3 Do you enjoy drive/driving?

- 4 We prefer swimming to/that running.
- 5 I think that film's very bored/boring.
- 6 Sue quite likes/likes quite studying English.

Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

	football	rugby	ice hockey	volleyball	tennis	basketball		
1			round 🕥 🕽					
2			nds more than					
3	These gar	nes have n	nore than four	players when	they are pla	aying:	***************************************	
4	This game	uses: a) r	ackets			o) sticks	the international state of the	

2 Read Chelsea's results for last year, and complete the sentences below.

	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
Chelsea	38	29	4	5	72	22	91
Chelsea ▶	played	38 ((1)	di sanguaniananang sa	. They won 2	29, they (2)	four.
and they (3)						(5)	
the season ((6)				91 points.		

Unit 50

1 C	omplete the dialogues.		
D	Does he like gardening	? ~ Yes, he's always in the	garden.
1		hobby? ~ I love camping. I	
2		s, she a lot o	
3		s, he old ca	
4	Do you play a musical		and sines.
5		music? ~ Yes, I do. I rea	lly like Mozart.
6			o time with friends.
2 C	omplete answer 'd' in each our country.	question. Then choose t	he answers that are true for you or
1	I enjoy		
	a playing cards b singing	c collecting things d	time with friends
2			
	a travelling b camping c	reading d	to the avm
3			3,
	a swimming b cooking of	drawing d computer	
4	2 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4		
	a paint well b play the gui	tar c sing well d	the piano
5		7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7. 7	
	a Table tennis b Skiing c	Fishing d Flower	
	it 51		
1 Pu	ut the words from the circl	e into two groups. Give e	ach group a title.
***************************************		manufacture of southborders	band 🗸
_ b	pand	and the second s	violin drummer
		Harding and the state of the st	orchestra cello
	nanonananadakadanan makanan makanan makanan	Month till atternational annual till blackbook annual annu	lead singer composer
************			a single conductor
Secretarion (guitar
_			
2 W	rite a different name to co		
1	**************************************	is a famous oper	a singer in my country.
2			
3		is a famous cond	luctor.
4	The	orchestra co	mes from my country.
5	NATIONAL PROPERTY OF THE PROPE	is a great pianist	
6			is one of my favourite albums.
.7	is number		
8			

Unit 52

1 Complete the sentences.

	It's an action film and it's very exciting
1	lt's a w film and it's very v
2	It's a c and it's very f
3	It's a h film and it's quite f
4	lt's a t and it's very e
4	It's a t and it's very e

5 It's a l_____story and it's very r_____

2

C	omplete the conversation.
Α	There's a good film \(\sum_{On} \) at the Odeon cinema. It's called Brokeback Mountain.
В	I've never heard of it. What's it (1)?
Α	A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
	Oh. Who's (2) it?
Α	It (3) Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
В	Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4)
Α	Yeah, and it's had great (5) in all the papers. The (6) is Ang Lee.
	He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7)it?

Unit 53

1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?

I usually buy newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I listened the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it TV. As usual most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting about a television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

	0
	α
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	

2 Match 1 – 6 with a – f.

- 1 an opinion
- 2 a news report ____
- 3 an event ____
- 4 an advertisement
- 5 the media
- 6 celebrities _____



54 I can arrange a holiday 6.

Things you might do or arrange before you go abroad on holiday:

- · book the flight
- · book the accommodation
- · find your passport
- · get a visa
- · get travel insurance
- · get foreign currency
- · pack your suitcase
- · hire a car

spotlight

might + verb

Might means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'.
Might is the same in all forms.
You might be ill on holiday.
He might forget his passport.
It might be cold in March.

Circle the correct word.

- ► I have to get/find a visa.
- 1 We went abroad/holiday last summer.
- 2 I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
- 3 We might/have go to Japan in June.
- 4 I need to hire/get travel insurance.
- 5 Can we pack/hire a car here?
- 6 I must hire/find my passport.
- 7 Have you made/packed your suitcase?
- 8 Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

Glossary

arrange something plan and organize something go abroad go to another country on holiday If you are on holiday, you are not at work and you are away from home.

book arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before you travel

flight a journey by plane accommodation a place to stay, e.g. a hotel find look and see where something is passport



visa a document or note in your passport
which means you can travel to certain countries
travel insurance You pay a company for travel
insurance so they will help you if you lose
something or are ill on holiday
foreign of another country
currency the money of a country, e.g. \$ (dollars)
or € (euros)
pack put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase



hire pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on holi	day for two weeks this Sati	ırday. I wanted to go (1) this
year, perhaps to the	Far East, and I finally decided to go	to China. I booked the (2)
with China Airlines.	l needed (3)too, s	I looked on the internet for hotels in
Beijing. I found a nic	ce one and (4) to st	ay there for the first week. I also had to (5)
a \	risa, and I got some foreign (6)	– Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for
travel (7)	; you never know, I (8)	be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow,
I'm going to (9)	my suitcase. I know I p	ut my passport somewhere, but where? I'll
have to (10)	it before Saturday!	



Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad. Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?

55 I can book a hotel room

A Describing a hotel 60

travelog.com

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minibar¹, internet access², satellite TV³ and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym⁴. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too. We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.



Circle the right answer.

- ► The bar was pleasant/delicious.
- 1 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
- 2 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn't recommend it to my sister.
- 3 The dinner was delicious/helpful.
- 4 A lot of tourists/quests visit our city.
- 5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
- 6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

2 Complete the questions.

		ABOUT YOU
-	What was the last hotel you stayed _in?	
1	How long did you there?	
2	Were the helpful?	
3	Did the room have good, e.g. internet access?	
4	Did it have a with drinks in your room?	
5	Did it haveTV?	
6	Did it have air and central?	
7	Did you talk to other in the hotel?	
2	Would you this hotel to other people?	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.



Glossary

stay in a hotel live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)

facilities things you can use, e.g. internet, gym air conditioning makes a room colder, central heating makes a room warmer

room service when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room

staff u people who work for a company helpful wanting to help

tourist someone who goes to a place on holiday guest a person staying in a hotel or your home delicious very good to eat

recommend say something is good

B Booking a room 60









twin room shower

double room single room

Katja (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

- Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
- K Oh, good morning, I'd like to book a double room with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
- That's fine. All our bedrooms are en suite. R
- K Right, and how much is that?
- R It's €60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price.
- That's great. And has the hotel got parking? K
- R No. I'm afraid not.
- K Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind. I'll take it.
- R Right, can I have your credit card details please?...

Answer the questions about the dialogue.

- Is Katja staying for two nights? No
- 1 Does she want a room for one person?
- 2 Has the room got a bathroom?
- 3 Is she happy about the price?
- 4 Will she pay more for breakfast?
- 5 How much is the room for one night?_____
- 6 Can she leave her car at the hotel?
- 7 Is she angry about the parking?
- 8 Do they want her credit card number?

Complete the dialogue.

	Α	Regent	Hotel,	can I	help yo	ou?
-			Contract			

- B Oh, hello, I'd (1) ______ to (2) _____ a room for two next Tuesday, please.
- A Is that a (3) ______ room or a (4) _____ ?
- B A double, please.
- A All our rooms are (5) , with bath or (6)
- A It's €45 (8) ______ night, and breakfast is (9) _____.
- B OK, and does the room have (10) _____ conditioning?
- A I'm (11) _____ not.
- B That's a (12) ______ . Oh, well, never (13) _____ . I'll take the room.
- A (14) ______, Could you give me your credit card (15) _____, please?

Glossary

book a room ask a hotel to keep a room for you for a future date en suite a bedroom with a bathroom right OK €60 a night = €60 for one night

included If breakfast is included. you don't pay any more for it. (that's) great fine; very good parking a place to leave a car I'm afraid not = I'm sorry, but no. never mind = it isn't important details information, e.g. the card number

spotlight

That's a shame/ What a shame

You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don't want to hear. I can't come this evening.

- ~ Oh, what a shame.
- ~ Oh, that's a shame.

56 I can communicate in an airport

A Check-in 60

When passengers¹ get to the airport, they put their luggage² (suitcase³ and bag⁴) on a trolley⁵ and go to the check-in desk⁶. There, they show their ticketⁿ and passport, and put their luggage on the scales⁶. They can take hand luggage⁰ on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, 'Do you want a window seat¹⁰ or an aisle seat¹¹?' They give the passenger a boarding card¹², and they often say, 'Have a good flight.'



12

Complete the words.

- ▶ p a s s enger
- 1 su _ tca _ e
- 2 l_gg_ge
- 3 ai_le se_t
- 4 h_nd l_gg_ge
- 5 have a q__d fl__ht

Time now: 10.30

- 6 a__p_t
- 7 b__rd__g ca_d

- 8 w_nd_w se_t
- 9 t_ck_t
- 10 sc_l_s
- 11 tr_ll_y



Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

B Departures 60

Departures from Bristol Airport

Flight	Destination	Departure time	Notes
EZY 6025	Barcelona	10.25	departed
KL 1048	Amsterdam	10.35	flight closed
BA 4021	Munich	10.50	last call gate 5
FR 483	Dublin	11.00	boarding gate 7
BA 7643	Milan	11.05	delayed until 11.50
BA 4084	Paris CDG	11.35	check-in desk 22

- 3 Look at the departures board. It is now 10.30. Circle the correct answer.
 - ► Can you get on the Dublin flight now? Yes No
 - 1 Can you get on the Barcelona plane now? Yes/No
 - 2 Can you get on the Amsterdam plane now? Yes/No
 - 3 Can you get on the Munich plane now? Yes/No
 - 4 Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
 - 5 How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

Glossary

departed If a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)

flight closed = You can't get on the plane now.

last call = You must get on
the plane now.

gate the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane

boarding If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.

delayed If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn't on time.)

U		Complete the airport announcements. Flight KI 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed	
		The To To to Amsterdam is now closed.	
	1	1 This is the last for passengers on flight BA4021 to Munich. Pl	ease go to
	2	5 immediately.	
	2	at go	ite 7.
	3	the die very sorry that highe by 7045 to which is	
	4	get by the property of the pressed o	sk 22.
	5	5 Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now at 11.50.	
C	T	Take-off and landing 60	
	1		
	M		(
	Yo	You get on the plane and The plane takes off . The plane lar	nds and
	fa	fasten your seat belt. you get off.	
			TO THE STATE OF TH
			18
	Yo	You go through passport control. You collect your luggage You go through	igh customs
		Someone checks your passport. from baggage reclaim . and leave the	
0			
9	Pı	Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.	
	a	a collect your luggage d the plane lands g get on the plane	1
	b	b go through customs e get off the plane h the plane takes off	
	c	c fasten your seat belt f leave the terminal i someone checks yo	ur passport
6	C	Complete the phrases.	
		You leave the terminal	
	1		
	2		
	3		
	4		
	5		
			and plant
V	Al	ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.	
	1	1 How often do you travel by plane?	***
	2		
	3		
	4		
0	VE		
8	1	Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each	h picture?

57 I can describe a beach holiday 6.

We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday **resort** in the south of France. We **flew** to Nice, then **got a bus** to Hyères. We **rented an apartment** near the **beach**¹, and that's where we spent most mornings. I was happy to **lie** on the beach and **sunbathe** in my new **swimming costume**²; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long **shorts**³. He went swimming a lot – the **sea**⁴ was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for **an hour or so**. In the late afternoon we usually **went for a walk**, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a **perfect** holiday.



Glossary

resort a place where a lot of people go for a holiday fly PT flew travel by plane get a bus travel by bus (also take a bus)

rent an apartment, house, etc. pay to use an apartment, house, etc.

apartment rooms you rent for a
holiday (also flat)

lie PT lay the woman in the picture is lying on the beach sunbathe take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun relax do nothing and enjoy yourself

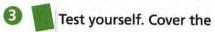
an hour or so about an hour go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself perfect If something is perfect it can't be better.

1	Write	the	words	for	the	meanings.
---	-------	-----	-------	-----	-----	-----------

- A place where people go for a holiday. resort
- 1 Pay money to use a house for a period of time. r_____
- 2 Women often wear one on the beach. s.____c___
- 3 Men often wear these on the beach. s_____
- 4 Rooms you rent for a holiday. a.....
- 5 You can swim in this, and it's not a pool. s._____
- 6 Very good; cannot be better. p_____
- 7 Do nothing and enjoy yourself. r_____
- 8 Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. s_____

2 Complete the sentences.

- ► I went for a swim in the <u>Sea</u>.
- 1 We sat on the _____ and looked at the sea.
- 2 We _____ a bus to the mountains, and then _____ for a walk.
 3 We _____ an apartment in a small holiday _____ near Malaga.
- 4 It takes an hour or ______ to get to the beach.
- 5 We spent two days near Paris, then ______ from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
- 6 I want to relax, so I'm just going to ______ on the beach and sunbathe.



Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1 - 4 in the picture.

58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday 6.

Word	Example	Meaning
map	You can get a map in Tourist Information.	
guide guidebook	Our guide was very good. A guidebook is useful.	A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.
typical	Look – a typical tourist, with a guidebook and camera.	A typical thing is a good example of its kind.
go sightseeing	We went sightseeing yesterday.	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places
art gallery	I'm going to an art gallery this afternoon.	a place where people can look at paintings
visit museums or art galleries etc.	You should visit the British Museum in London.	visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things
look round	I want to look round the town.	walk round a place to see it
go on a (guided) tour	We went on a tour of the old town.	a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide
get lost	I got lost so I asked for help.	If you get lost or are lost , you don't know where you are.
take photos	I took lots of photos.	

-	0-22-64-0			
	Circle	the	correct	word.

- art museum(gallery) 4 make/take photos
- 1 go/do sightseeing 5 guide/guided tour
- 2 guide map/book 6 go on/make a tour
- 3 visit/go a museum

spotlight should + verb

You should go to that museum means 'it is a good idea to go to that museum'. Should is the same in all forms.

If you go to Peru, you should visit Machu Pichu. It's fantastic.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We went on a guided tour.
- 1 She _____ a lot of photos of some _____ old French villages.
- 2 You _____ go and look _____ the museums they're very interesting.
- 3 I _____lost because I didn't have a _____.
- 4 We went to the _____ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
- 5 We _____ on a tour of the centre and the _____ was interesting and funny.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

- 3 buy a guidebook?
- 4 take photos?
- 1 go sightseeing? _____ 5 visit museums and art galleries? _____
- 2 take a map with you? _____ 6 look round the shops? _____
 - 7 often get lost?
 - 8 go on a guided tour?

59 I can use the bank and post office

A At the bank 60

Questions	Answers	Meaning
Can I use this card in this cash machine?	If it's a Visa card, yes.	also ATM
Where can I change dollars into euros?	In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.	change (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros
Is there a bureau de change near here?	Yes, there's one at the station.	an office where you can change money
Which currency do I need for Argentina?	You need pesos.	the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA
I've got Japanese yen. What's the exchange rate for the euro?	It's 142 yen to the euro.	exchange rate how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US\$10 = €12.40
Where do I sign this?	Just here.	
What commission do you charge?	We charge 1%. (% = per cent)	commission the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency charge ask someone to pay a certain price for something

Match 1 – 5 with a – f to make question	ons	questic	make	-fto	a	with	1 - 5	Match	0
---	-----	---------	------	------	---	------	-------	-------	---

▶ Where can I change my euros __f__ a for Brazil? 1 What currency do I need _____ b for the peso? 2 What commission c do you charge? 3 Can I use this card _____ d in this cash machine? e in the station? 4 What's the exchange rate 5 Is there a bureau de change _____ f into dollars? /

Complete the sentences.

► The banks <u>charge</u> 1.5% commission. 4 What's the exchange _____? 5 You pay one _____ cent to the bank. 1 _____ the cheque at the bottom. 2 _____ dollars into euros. 6 You get money from a 3 The _____ in China is the yuan. machine.

A	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
1	What's the currency in your country?
2	Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar?
3	When you travel, where do you get or change money?
4	Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency?
5	Where do you find cash machines in your country?

B At the post office 60

1 You want to send a letter to a friend.



You write the name, address and postcode on the envelope.



You put a stamp on it.



You **post** it in the **letter box** or **postbox**.



The **postman** or **postwoman delivers** it in the next day or two.

2 You want to send a parcel to Germany.



You take it to the **post** office.



'How much is this parcel to Germany, please?'



'Put it on **the scales**, please. 350 gms – that's £3.43.'



'That's fine. And can
I have two stamps for
postcards to Germany?'

Answer the questions.	Choose answers	from	the	box.
-----------------------	----------------	------	-----	------

- ▶ Where do you post letters? in a postbox, in a letter box
- 1 What do postmen do?
- 2 What do you write on an envelope?
- 3 Where do you take a parcel?
- 4 Where do you put the parcel?
- 5 What do you put on an envelope/parcel?
- 6 Who takes parcels to people's homes?
- 7 Which three things can you send?

to the post office a postcard in a postbox deliver letters a stamp the postman a letter the name, address and postcode in a letter box da parcel on the scales

Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.

- ▶ please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this /? How (much) is this parcel to Japan, please?
- 1 box/is/near/there/here/a/?
- 2 scales / can / it / you / the / on / ? _____
- 3 Argentina / I / for / three / can / stamps / ?
- 4 letter / where / post / this / 1 / ?
- 5 Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ?
- 6 post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at /?

	V	
6		

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?

Review: Holidays

Unit 54

Read the text on the right.	
Find words in the text to match	the meanings.

•	of another country which is not your country foreign
1	plan or organize
2	money that a country uses
3	pay to use something for a short time
4	go to another country
5	a time when you don't have to work
6	arrange and pay for something in advance
7	put your things in a bag before you travel
8	a journey by plane
a	a place to stay e.g. a hotel

When you go abroad on holiday, you might need to arrange certain things. Firstly, you will probably need to book a flight and your accommodation. For some countries, you will need to take or send your passport to the embassy of that country to get a visa, and you might also need foreign currency. Some travellers like to hire a car before they go, and then get it at the airport. And when you pack your suitcase, don't forget your passport!

Unit 55

1 Match 1 - 10 with a - k.

-	doublee	6	I'm afraid	a	conditioning	g	TV
1	central	7	never	b	a shame	h	heating
2	air	8	book	C	in the price	i	mind
3	internet	9	what	d	access	j	service
4	room	10	included	е	room ✓	k	a room
5	satellite			f	not		

2 Complete the conversation.

	a good noter in New Tork?
	Yes, we (1) in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior. Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
В	Yes, they were all (2)
Α	And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
В	Yes, the room (3) were great. And the hotel (4) were really friendly and helpful too.
Α	How about the food?
В	It was really good – in fact, it was (5) And the hotel wasn't too expensive – it was about \$50 a (6)
Α	That's good, isn't it? And has it got (7)?
В	I don't know. We didn't have a car.
Α	It sounds perfect. I think I'll (8) a room, then.

1 Match 1 – 9 with a -

	departures	5	seat	а	luggage	f	card
1	check-in	6	hand	b	belt	g	call
2	gate	7	aisle	С	closed	h	control
3	last	8	boarding	d	seat	i	desk
4	passport	9	flight	е	seven	i	board 🗸

2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.

1	I couldn't carry my suitcases, so I put them on a
2	I had to show my passport and at the check-in desk.
3	I put my luggage on the and it was 25 kilos.
4	The check-in person said, 'Have a good'.
5	I was an hour late because my flight was
6	When I on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7	I my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8	It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane at Manchester Airport.
9	After we got off the plane, we went and our luggage.
0	When I through customs, there was nobody there.

Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunbathed	went	get	perfect	holiday 🗸	or	flew	rented	resort
We had a lovely	√in France	last		•	holiday			
year. We to Ma	rseille Airp	ort and	then	1				
we had to a bus	s to Cassis	, which	is	2			phone my	
a very nice holic	day by the	sea.		3	***************************************	***************************************		
We an apartme	nt in the c	entre of	Ē.	4	***************************************			
the town. Every	morning	we for a	3	5	340 eno contrarence and contra			
walk round the	town, the	n we or	1	6				
the beach for a	n hour so.	The		7	-			
weather was fo	r the who	le week		8			manus data da	

Correct	one	mista	ke in	each	sentence
COLLECT	ULIC	1111310	~	COLL	Section in the least of the lea

	She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.
1	We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon.
	Did you go seeing in Paris?
	We always go lost in a new place.
4	She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5	Did you visit at the museum?
6	There were lots of typic tourists.
	There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
8	Have you got a guided book about London, please?

Unit 59

1 Write words beginning with P and C.

>	post	a letter = put a letter in a letter box
1	p	= where you buy stamps
2	p	= the numbers and letters at the end of an address
3	p	= the person who delivers the letters
4	p	= letter box
5	p	= you write these on holiday
6	p	= you a stamp on an envelope
7		= %
8	p	== you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box
9	C	= the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros
10	C	= a place inside or outside a bank where you can get
	money with a card	
11	C	= e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos
12	C	= you have to pay this to a bank for changing money
13	c	= a bank can 1% for changing money

2 Complete the questions.

	Can I have five Stamps	for postcards to Russia, please?
1	How much is it to	a 1 kg parcel to Italy?
2	Did you put a stamp on the	?
3	How many letters did the postman	today?
4	What's the	for the Brazilian Real?
5	Can I change dollars	pounds sterling here?
6	Is there a de	in the centre?

60 I can meet and greet people

A Introductions 60



Sam and Mary meet for the first time ...

JANE Sam, this is Mary.

MARY Hello.

SAM Hi. Nice to meet you.



two hours later ...

MARY Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you. Sam Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

Glossary bye a short form of goodbye

bye a short form of goodbye shake hands



spotlight Introductions

- Hi is informal and common with young people.
- How do you do? is also possible, but now very formal.
- We often use Nice to meet you or Good to meet you when we meet people for the first time, and when we say goodbye the first time after we meet them.
- Make sentences from the words.
 - ► you/do/how/do/? How do you do?
 - 1 meet / nice / hello / you / to
 - 2 this / Max / Hanna / is ______
 - 3 again / hope / you / bye / to / l / see
 - 4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet
- Complete the dialogues.

Jan

1	Lucia	Emma, ▶ <u>this</u> is Alex.
	Alex	Hi, Emma to meet you.
	Emma	
2	Alex	Goodbye, Emma. I to see you
	Emma	Yes
3	Chris	Jan, this Dan.
	Jan	, Dan. Good
	Dan	, Jan.
4	Dan	Well, again.

B Meeting a friend 6

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

- T Hi, Matt. How are you?
- M Fine, thanks. And you?
- T Yes, not bad.
- M Good. And how's Sarah?
- T Yeah, she's very well.

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

- M OK. I've got to go now. See you later.
- T Sure. About 7.00?
- M Yeah, that's fine.
- T Good. See you then.
- M OK. Bye.
- Complete the phrases.
 - ► How are vou?
 - 1 S__ you _ g___.
 - 2 | m_st g_ n_w.
 - 3 S__ you l_t__.
 - 4 H_'s v__y w__l.

Glossary

how are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. (also how are things?)

fine or very well or not bad are common replies to 'How are you?' NOT very fine

have got to do = have to do or must do (have got to is more informal)

spotlight See you...

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you next Saturday.

See you then = at the time we agreed

See you later = the same day

See you soon = another day, e.g. next week

See you again = another time, but I'm not sure when

- 5 S__ you s___.
- 6 H_w _r_ th___s?
- 7 S__ you _n S__d_y.
- 8 I'v_ g_t t_ go n_w.
- 9 Th__'s f_n_.
- Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.
 - 1 Jim Hi, How <u>are you</u>?

 Sam I'm very . And you?

 Jim Yeah, not . And . . And your wife?
 - Sam She's _____.

- 2 Jim Sam, I ______ go now.
 Sam OK. See you _____.
 - Jim Sure. What time? 6.30?
 - Sam Yeah, _____fine . See you ___
- C Saying hello and goodbye 60

	hello			goodbye			
	anytime (24 hours)	before lunch	after lunch	after 6 p.m.	anytime	at the end of the evening	
	hello	good morning	good afternoon	good evening	goodbye	goodnight	
more informal	hi or hi there	morning	afternoon	evening	bye or bye bye	night	

6

Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:		more informal
see someone anytime?	Hello	Hi
1 see someone before lunch?		
2 see someone after 6.00 p.m.?		
3 see someone after lunch?		
4 say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?		

61 I can use special greetings 6

Say this to someone when:	Expression	Response
you say goodbye	have a nice day/evening have a good/lovely weekend	thanks, you too and you
someone is going to bed	goodnight, sleep well	
it's Christmas/new year/ Easter (Easter is a Christian festival in March or April.)	happy/merry Christmas happy New Year happy Easter	happy Christmas, etc. the same to you
it's their birthday	happy birthday	
they've done something well or passed an exam	well done congratulations	thank you thanks
they are getting married or having a baby	congratulations NOT well done	
they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam	good luck not good lucky	
they are going away, e.g. on holiday	have a good/nice holiday/time have a good journey	
someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time	welcome to London welcome home/back	
	cheers	cheers

1	Match 1 – 9 with a – j.			
	Merry Christmas! b	a	You too.	spotlight cheers Cheers has two other
	1 I'm going to New York.	b	The same to you. ✓	meanings in informal,
	2 Cheers!	C	Good luck.	spoken English.
	3 Goodnight.	d	Welcome home!	1 Thank you
	4 Hello! I'm back!	e	Well done!	Here's the money you lent
	5 I'm 21 today	f	Congratulations.	me. ~ Oh, cheers .
	6 It's my driving test today.	g	Sleep well.	2 Goodbye
	7 Bob and I are getting married.	h	Cheers!	See you later. ~ Cheers.
	8 I've passed my driving test.	i	Have a good journey.	
	9 Have a nice evening.	i	Happy birthday!	

Complete the phrases.

1	Have a nice/good	day	/e/w		/h	
	j/t					
2	Нарру С	/E	/N	ΥΥ	/b	
3	Goodn	/Good I	!/Well d		!/W	homel

Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?

62 I can ask for information

A About people 60

Who do you live with, Tracey? And what's your brother like? And your boyfriend – what does he do?

How long have you known him?

I understand you're learning Spanish.

How often are the classes?

And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain?

What's wrong with England?

How about you? What do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

- ~ My parents, and my younger brother.
- ~ He's stupid and a bit fat.
- ~ He works for an airline company.
- ~ About two years.
- ~ Yes, that's right.
- ~ Twice a week.
- ~ Because we want to live in Spain.
- ~ My boyfriend's.
- ~ He doesn't like the weather.
- ~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.
- ~ My boyfriend can still work for his company, and I can get a job in a bar.

Glossary

What's wrong with England? = What's the problem with England?

Make questions from the words

spotlight whose and belong to

Whose money is that? ~ It's mine. (It's my money.)
Who does this bag belong to? ~ It's Ben's. (The bag belongs to Ben.) Nor Whose does this bag belong to?

•	for / do / work/ who / you /? Who do you work for?
1	you / often / there / go / how / do /?
2	like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ?
3	he / does / what / do ?
	have / lived / how long / there / you / ?
5	wrong / Peter / with / what's / ?
6	this / to / belong / does / who /?
7	his / like / what's / flat / ?
8	like / you / why / her / don't / ?

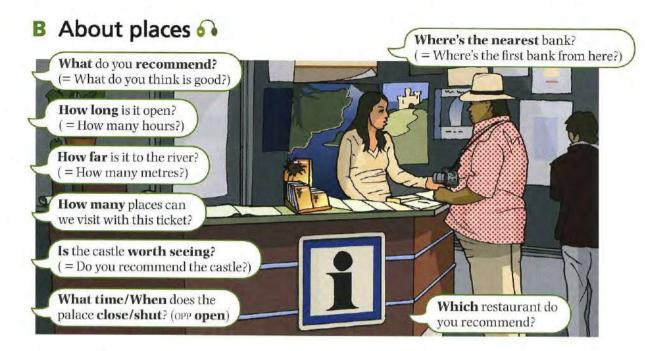
2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

- Because she's horrible to me. 8

 a Ten years. _____
- b He's very angry with me. _____
- c It's small but very nice. ____
- d Twice a year.
- f He's a doctor.
- g Rock and pop.

Complete the dialogues.

- What kind of animal is it?
 I think it's a horse.
- 1 How _____ do you go? ~ Every week.
- jacket is this? ~ It's mine.s she like? ~ She's very nice.
- 4 I don't speak German. _____about you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.
- 5 How _____ have you worked there? ~ Six months.
- 6 _____ does this belong to?
 - ~ I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.



4 Circle the correct answers.

- ► How far/long is it to the museum?
- 1 Which/what is your address?
- 2 How long/long time do you need?
- 3 What hour/time does it open?
- 4 How much/many places did you visit?
- 5 Where's the nearest/next café?
- 6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

spotlight which or what?

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities. We have a double room or a twin. **Which** do you prefer? In other situations, use **what**.

What's the address of the hotel? (NOT Which is the address?)

Complete the questions.

-	When	does the post office open?
1	How	is it to the station?
2	How	places did you go to?
3	There are two	do you want?
4	***************************************	s the phone number of the bank?
5	It opens at 8.00, I	out when does it 7
6	Is it	going to see Notre Dame?
7	Where's the	underground station?
8	There's a lot to se	e. What do you?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.

5 Can you recommend any restaurants?

1	Where do you live?
2	How long have you lived there?
3	Which places are worth visiting?

4 How far are they from your home?

63 I can ask for things

A Requests and responses 60

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses
Can you bring the dictionaries here, please?	Sure.
Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?	OK. Yeah, sure.
Yuri, could you possibly take these books to the staffroom?	Yeah, no problem. Yes, of course.
Elena, can you change places with Gabi?	
Could you lend me a pen, Boris?	X (No), I'm afraid
Dmitri, could you possibly wait here a few minutes?	I can't.

spotlight Being polite

Can and **could** have the same meaning in the table. **Could you possibly** ...? is more polite, for a bigger request.

Please is very common, and makes a request more polite.

I'm afraid ... is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

Glossary





bring

take

finish something do or complete the last part of something

change places e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place

lend give something to someone to use for a short time

wait stay in one place for a short time until something happens

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, but I can't NOT I'mafraid but I can't

1	Complete the dialogues	with one word	in each space.
---	------------------------	---------------	----------------

	Can you	clean <u>the</u> boa	ard?	
1	Can	lend a per	n? ~ Yes,	course.
2	Could you	the books here,	? ~ Yes,	problem.
3	Could you	wait here a few	? ~ l'm	l can't.
4	Lia, can you	places	Maris,	? ~ Yeah ,

Use the words to write requests and responses. Use can, could and could ... possibly and different responses.

	take / books / away
	A Could you take these books away, please?
	B Yes, sure.
1	finish / exercise / homework
	Α
	В
2	Luca / change places / Maria
	Α
	В

3	bring / notebook / tomorrow
	Α
	В
4	lend / pencil
	Α
	В
5	wait / classroom a few minutes
	A
	В

B Asking for and giving permission 60

50		lld you lend me our dictionary?	Could I borrow
1	150	Sure. Y	your pen?
		Sure. 9	I'm afraid I need it. Y
5		t all right if I	
4	sit	in that chair?	Is it OK if I close the door:
(Yes	s, that's fine.	Yes, sure.
_			ico, sure.
		u mind if I look	
_	at y	our answers?	Can I open the window
(N	o, go ahead.	Sure, go ahead.
GI	oss	sary	spotlight lend and borrow
		ead or that's fine You say go ahead or that's	If you borrow a pen from someone, you use
		when you give someone permission to do ething.	their pen, then give it back.
		nt = OK	If you lend someone a pen, you give them
		u mind if? = Is it a problem for you if?	your pen to use for a short time.
(7	The	answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a	Could I borrow your pen? = Could you lend me your pen?
p	robl	em'.)	grave Erra
3		rite new sentences. Change the bold word	ds. The meaning must be the same.
	1	Is it OK if I use this dictionary?	
	2	Is it OK if I make a coffee?	
	3	Can I stay for another ten minutes?	
	4	Is it OK to close the window?	
	5	Can you lend me your book?	
	6	Can I sit here? ~ Yes, of course.	
	7	Can I use the computer? ~ I'm sorry but I need	d it
	8	Is it OK to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, sure	
4	As	sk for permission. Use different words in e	ach sentence.
	•	You want to sit near the window. Can I sit ne	car the window?
	1	You want to go at one o'clock today.	
	2	You want to borrow a rubber.	
	3	You want to go to the toilet.	
	4	You want to sit in a different seat.	
5		Test yourself. Write five more ways to g	ive permission from this unit
	-	V	
	1		
	1		The state of the s
	1	5	

64 I can invite people 6

Inviting

Would you like to ... Do you want to ...

- ... go out for a meal/a drink?
- ... come round for a coffee?
- ... come to a party?





Saying yes

Yes, great!
Yes, I'd love to!
That sounds lovely/fun/good.
That would be lovely/nice.



Saying no

I'm afraid I can't.
I'm sorry, but I'm busy.
I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.



spotlight

Would you like to ... or Do you want to ...?

Would you like to...? is a little more polite than Do you want to...?

- A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.
 - ► How/tomorrow? about
 - 1 Would you to come round later?
 - 2 Yes, I'd love.
 - 3 Do you want to out for dinner?
 - 4 That lovely.
 - 5 I'm afraid can't.
 - 6 That be nice.
 - 7 Do you want come to a party?
 - 8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.
- Complete the questions and answers.
 - Invite someone for a drink in a bar. Say yes.
 - Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
 Say yes.
 - 2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee. Say no politely.
 - 3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow. Say yes.
 - 4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café. Say no politely.

Glossary

invite ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.

go out for a meal or a drink means 'go to a restaurant or a café/bar' come round come to my home party a time when friends meet to eat,

drink, dance, play games, etc.

great very good syn wonderful
I'd love to = I want to do it very much
(I'd = I would)

That sounds lovely. = I think that's a lovely idea.

That would be lovely. = I would like to do it.

busy If you are busy, you have a lot of things to do.

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, (but) I can't NOT I'm afraid but I can't

A Do you want to go out for a drink?

B That would be lovely

A Would ?

B Yes, g ...

A Do ...

P I'm a ...

A Would ...

Yes, that s ...

A Do ...

B I'd ...

P but

gym.

65 I can make suggestions 6

Ask	or a suggestion What sha Where sh	this weekend?
Mak	e a suggestion Shall we go to to Maybe we coul	he beach? What about going to an exhibition: d go out for a meal. Let's go out for a drink.
	that's a) good/great idea! , let's do that.	Say 'no', or make another suggestion I'm not sure (about that). Well, I'd prefer to stay at home. Hmm or perhaps we could go to the mountains
Pı	ut the dialogue in order.	Glossary
Th Ye W M Fir	I prefer to get them at the station. The weather's nice, so The station of the station of the weather's nice, so That shall we do this weekend? That shall we do this weekend? That shall we get the train. The shall we get the tickets online? That about going to the beach?	suggestion an idea that someone gives you to think about maybe/perhaps possibly What about? = What do you think about? spotlight Saying no It isn't very polite to say no to a suggestion in English. It's more polite to say, I'm not sure, or make another suggestion. Shall we go out? ~ Well, I'd prefer to stay in.
Co	orrect the mistakes.	
1 2 3 4 5	What do we do this evening? Do you have a suggest? What about go to see a film?	end. We could have a party this weekend.
w	rite in a word where there is a /.	
1	A ► What / we do / evening? What B What / going / the theatre?	at shall we do this evening?
2	A What / we / on Saturday? B Perhaps we / go out for a meal _	
3	A Where / we go / afternoon? B /'s go to an exhibition	

66 I can offer, accept, and refuse

A Offering food, drink or help 60



Offering food/drink Would you like a biscuit? Do you want something to eat?

Accept = say yes Refuse = say no

Yes, please.

No. thanks.

Thanks.

Thanks. Could I have ...?



Offering help Can I give you a hand? Do you need some help?

Accept

Yes, please.

Thanks a lot.

Thank you (very much).

Refuse

No. I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

spotlight Saying thank you

Thanks or Thanks a lot are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. Thank you (very much) is more formal.

		Could you like something to drink? Would						
	1	Can I give you a band?	~ No, don't lorry.					
	2	Do you want something to ear?						
	3	So you need some help?	~ No, I'm mine, thanks.					
		Would you bike a drink?	~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee?					
2	O	One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.						
	-	No worry don't	Would you a drink?					

1 Can I give you hand? _____ 4 Thanks lot. ____

Complete the questions and answers.

Offer someone food.

 Offer someone a drink. Accept, and ask for some water. 2 Offer someone help. Say no politely. 3 Offer someone food. Accept, and ask for an apple.

4 Offer someone help. Say no.

2 Thank you much. 5 No, fine, thanks. Do you want something to eat? A Would _____ a drink?

B Yes, _____ ... water? A Do _____help?

B Yes, _____ an apple?

A Can _____ hand? B No, _____worry.

B Offering to do something 6.



Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.



Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.



Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.



Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

spotlight let me + verb

We use **let me** + verb when we really want to do something for someone. **Let me** pay for lunch. **Let me** get the train tickets. **Let me** give you a **lift** to the station. = Let me take you in my car.

Match 1 – 6 with a – g.

- ► I'm really hungry. ______
- 1 I haven't got much money.
- 2 Are the dishes dirty? _____
- 3 I have to go to the airport.
- 4 This suitcase is really heavy.
- 5 Is that someone at the door? _____
- 6 I don't feel very well.

- a Let me carry it for you.
- b Do you want me to ring the doctor?
- c Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
- d That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
- e Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
- f Let me give you a lift.
- g Yes. Shall I see who it is?

6 Circle the correct word.

- ► Shal(/Let)me answer the door.
- 1 That's very kind for/of you.
- 2 Let/Let's me get the shopping.
- 3 Let/Shall I answer the phone?
- 4 Would/Do you like me to help?
- 5 Shall I/I'll carry that for you?
 - 6 Shall I give/take you a lift to work?
 - 7 Let me/I do the washing-up.
- 8 Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?

6 Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. it's, I'll) in each gap.

- 1 A I'm just going to the post office.

 B Well, ▶ _let_____ me give ______ a _____.

 A Oh, ______. That's very ______ of _____.
 - 2 A I'm really tired!
 - B OK. _____ the dinner for you?
 - A Yes, ______ do the washing-up afterwards.
 - 3 A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Let ______ it for you.
 - B Oh, _____ very much.
 - 4 A Oh, no! That's the phone again!
 - B Do you _____ me to answer it?

67 I can say sorry and respond 6

He pushed me but didn't apologize.



Really! That's very rude.

Saying sorry/apologizing	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well. I'm sorry, I've broken a cup. I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen. I forgot to post your letter. I'm really sorry. Sorry I'm late. The traffic was terrible.	That's all right. I'll speak slowly. That's OK. Don't worry. It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens. Never mind. I can post it later. Oh, don't worry about it.

Glossary

apologize to someone say sorry to someone rude opp polite that's all right/don't worry/it doesn't matter/never mind These phrases all mean 'it's not important/it's OK'. break pr broke

pr broken

lose PT/PP lost If you lose something, you can't find it.
forget PT forgot PP forgotten OPP remember
really sorry very sorry
sorry I'm late NOT sorry for be late

spotlight (I'm) sorry

We can also use (I'm) sorry to ask someone to repeat something:
Sorry, could you repeat that,
please? ~ Sure, no problem.
I'm sorry, what was your name again?
~ It's Marianne.

1	Correct	the	mista	kes
	Correct	rue	IIIISta	KG2"

	l'm	sorry for be late. I'm sorry I'm late.
1	Α	I'm really sorry. I've lose your dictionary.
	В	Don't mind.
2	Α	I'm sorry, I've forget your book.
	В	No worry.
3	A	I've break your cup – I'm very sorry.
		It isn't matter.

Complete the dialogues.

1	Α	I'm really sorry.	5	Α	I'm sorry late. I missed the bus.
	В	all right.		В	That's OK.
2	A	Sorry I'm late.	6	Α	, could you repeat that, please?
	В	Don't		В	Sure, no
3	Α	I'msorry.	7	Α	Did he to you?
	В	It doesn't		В	Yes, he was very sorry.
4	Α	It's broken – I'm very sorry.	8	Α	Did he say sorry?
	В	Oh, never		В	No, he's very

Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.

68 I can express my opinion 6

-	think the school is excellent.	~ Yes, I agree.
(I	He wants our opinion of the course.	~ Well, I don't think it's very good.)
(1	thought it was a very funny book.	
(1	What do you think of London?	~ I agree with you. I loved it.)
I	like this dress. What do you think?	~ Personally, I don't like big cities.
		~ I'm not sure. I think I prefer the other one.
	Max said the course was a waste of money.	~ I disagree. I thought it was great.)
PI	ut the words in order, and add one	
m	ore word to make a sentence.	Glossary
	very/1/good/it's I think it's very good.	think PT thought have an opinion about something excellent very good
1	do / it / think / what / you / ?	agree with someone have the same opinion as someone NOT I'm agree OPP disagree
2	you / agree / I	opinion what you think about something I don't think it's very good NOT I think it's not very
	don't / very / I / good / it's	good personally You can use personally to introduce your
	don't very 117 good 7 it's	opinion.
	waste / it / money / a / was	I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely.
	I / like / personally / didn't	prefer like one thing more than another a waste of money a bad way to use money (also a waste of time)
	one / I / other / prefer	reduce of mile)
_(omplete the dialogues.	
	1 like this. ~ Yes, 1 agree .	
		of it? ~, I don't like it very much.
		~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great.
3	What did you think her ide	a? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very good.
	I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not	; it's a bit small. I think I her old one
1	BOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree hat they think.	? Write your opinion, or ask another student
	I think people watch too much TV.	
	Smoking's bad for you.	
2	Smoking's bad for you	
	I think football's boring.	

69 I can use the phone

A Phone vocabulary 60

Phone numbers	What's your phone number? ~ It's 245731. What's your mobile number? ~ It's 07700 900 796. What's the (area) code for Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.						
Phone verbs	You call or ring someone. PT rang	= phone someone					
	You text someone.	= send someone a text (message) e.g. CUL8R = see you later					
	You take a message . = take information during a phone and give it to someone else						
	You leave a message.	= give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else					
Phone problems	The line is engaged/busy.	= the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already					
	The person is out/isn't in.	= not there					
	It's the wrong number.	= you make a mistake with the number					
	The battery's flat on the mobile.	= no electricity					

Same or different? Write S or D.

-	He phoned/rang his sister.	S
1	What's your phone/mobile number?	
2	two six oh/zero four	
3	I left/took a message.	
4	I'm sorry, she isn't in/'s out.	
5	The line was busy/engaged.	
6	I texted him/sent him a text.	

spotlight Saying phone numbers

Say each number, e.g. 245731 is **two four five seven three one**.

Say **double** when two numbers are the same, e.g. 33 = **double three**.

For '0', say **oh** or **zero**, e.g. 602448 is **six oh/zero two double four eight**.

2	Complete t	the dia	loques	with o	ne wor	d in	each	space.
-	Complete	uic aia	logues	WILLI O	IIC VVOI	A 1111	CUCII	spuce.

- 1 Did you ▶ ring _____ Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e _____ . I'll p _____ her later.
 2 What's your phone n _____ ? ~ It's 345489. And the c _____ for Oxford is 01865.
 3 Did you c _____ Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o _____ , so I left a _____ her mobile too, but I think the b _____ was flat.
 4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w _____ number.
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 What's your phone number, area code and mobile number?
 - 2 Who do you ring most often?
 - 3 How long do you spend on the phone every day?
 - 4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to?

B Phone conversations

Lau	ra (L) is	s phoning Brenda (B).	An	ton Jackson (A	J) is speaking to a receptionist (R)	
В	He	llo?		R	Hello?		
L			t Brenda?	AJ		n I speak to Mr Ellis, please?	
В			peaking.	R	I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment.		
L			llo. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.		calling?	40	
В			ura, how are you?	AJ	It's Anton Ja		
L B			e thanks. Is Jessica in, please? st a moment—I'll get her for you	R AJ		o you want to leave a message? Can you tell him I'll ring him ening?	
				R	Of course, no		
				AJ	Thanks very	much. Goodbye.	
4	Tie	ck (✓) the correct response.			Glossary	
	-	Ca	n I speak to Sam, please?			Is that Brenda? NOT Are you	
			's not in at the moment. 🕢 He's not	in just a	moment.	Brenda?	
	1	He	llo?			speaking = Yes, this is	
		Sn	eaking. Oh, hello, is that Kamal?			Brenda.	
	2	100	n I speak to Lia Ponte, please?			This is Laura or It's Laura NOT I am/Here is Laura	
	_		st a moment. It's Natasha.			just a moment wait a minute	
	2					get someone go and find	
	3		ello, is that Galina?	1		someone and bring them to	
			n, hello, this is Carla Speaking	_		the phone at the moment now	
	4		llo, this is Angela Brandt.	-		Who's calling? This is the	
		Or	n, hello, how are you? 💹 Who's callin	ng?		polite way to ask 'Who are you?'	
5	Co	omp	olete the conversations.			ring/phone/call someone	
	1	Α	Hello?			back phone someone again	
		В	Hello. ▶ <u>Is that</u> Marisa?				
			Yes, (1)				
			Oh, hello. (2)	Dag	ımar.		
		Α	Oh, hello, Dagmar.				
			Is Mikki (3),				
		Α	I'm sorry, he's out at (4)				
			Can I take a message?				
		В	Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5)	him _	a	fter lunch.	
	2	A	Hello?				
		В	Oh, can I (6)				
		A	Yes, (7) n	noment.	ı'll (8)	him for you.	
	3	Α	Hello?				
		В	Oh, hello. (9)	Joa	nna?		
		Α	Yes, (10)				
		В	Hello, Joanna, (11)''s Ru	dy.			
		Α	Hi, Rudy. How are you?				

Review: Social English

Unit 60

1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

	Afternoon!	Good afternoon!	S
1	Morning!	Good morning!	
2	Hi!	Bye!	
3	I'm fine.	I'm very well.	
4	See you later.	See you tomorrow.	
5	Good to meet you.	Nice to meet you.	
6	How are you?	How are things?	
7	Hello.	Hi, there.	
8	Bye!	Goodbye!	
9	How do you do?	How are you?	
10	I've got to go.	I must go.	

2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

[▶] good	-> evening	¹ hope	bad	4 how	do
later	see	to	³ not	you	you
you	you	again	² how	are	do
⁹ see	you	meet	soon	you	5 shake
there	⁸ hi	to	⁷ nice	⁶ see	hands

Unit 61

What do you say in these situations	What d	o you	say	in these	situations
-------------------------------------	--------	-------	-----	----------	------------

It's Christmas Day. Happy Christmas!

1 It's your friend's birthday.

2 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon.

3 Someone tells you they are getting married.

4 A friend is going to take an exam.

5 A friend has passed an exam.

6 Someone has returned home after a long time.

7 A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow.

8 It's the first day of January.

	When/What time?	~ 7.30p.m.			- Next to the bank
	своинализательного станований ста				~ Three hours.
	n-interested in the second sec				~ It's mine.
	Managara Ma				~ I prefer this one.
4	According to the second	~ Twice a week.	9		~ It's John.
C	ircle the correct form	then write your answ		Table 1	
(1	L 171 - 2	ABO	UT YOU	
	What's How's your English		300000000000000000000000000000000000000	The state of the s	
- 1	've got one sister. What's	/How about you?	- manipulation of the same		
. /	And what do/are you do?		- Indiana and a second		
1	And what does/is your be	st friend do?	***************************************		
. 1	How often/many do you s	study English every wee	k?		
1	low long/long time have	you studied English?			
Jn c	What kind/kind of games it 63 omplete the sentence	s with / or <i>you</i> .			
Jn c	it 63 omplete the sentence	s with / or <i>you</i> .			
Jn c	omplete the sentences Can born Do mind	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please if go now	?		
Jn 0	omplete the sentence: Can born Do mind'm afraid.	s with / or you. ow a dictionary, please of this.	?		
Jn C 1 2 3	omplete the sentence: Can borro Do mind 'm afraid Could po	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please? if go now need this. ssibly carry this for me?	?		
Jn C 1 2 3 4	omplete the sentence: Can born Do mind 'm afraid Could po Can lend	s with / or you. ow a dictionary, please if go now need this. ssibly carry this for me? me your bike, please?	?		
1 1 2 3 4 5	omplete the sentence: Can born Do mind 'm afraid Could porn Can lend Is it OK if	ow a dictionary, please of go now need this. ssibly carry this for me? me your bike, please?	?		
Jn Co 1 2 3 4	omplete the sentences Can born Do mind 'm afraid Could po Can lend Is it OK if Could bo	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please; if go now	?		
1 1 2 3 4 5	omplete the sentence: Can borre Do mind 'm afraid Could pore Can lend Is it OK if borre Is it all right if	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please? if go now	7		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	omplete the sentences Can borre Do mind 'm afraid Could pore Can lend Is it OK if borre Could borre Is it all right if	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please; if go now need this. ssibly carry this for me? me your bike, please? leave the car here? rrow €10, please? use your phone? se it to the postbox, please.	? ? ase?		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	can borner. Can borner. Do mind 'm afraid Could porner. Is it OK if borner. Could borner. Is it all right if borner. Could borner. Is it all right if borner. Could borner.	ow a dictionary, please? if go now	r? r? ase? ⁄lia?		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	omplete the sentences Can born Do mind 'm afraid Could po Can lend Is it OK if Could bo Is it all right if Could tak Dina, could nd five more response	s with I or you. ow a dictionary, please of the possibly carry this for me? me your bike, please? leave the car here? rrow €10, please? use your phone? te it to the postbox, please of the postbox of the postbo	r? r? ase? ⁄lia?		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	omplete the sentences Can born Do mind 'm afraid Could po Can lend Is it OK if Could bo Is it all right if Could tak Dina, could nd five more response	ow a dictionary, please? if go now need this. ssibly carry this for me? me your bike, please? leave the car here? rrow €10, please? use your phone? te it to the postbox, please it to the postbox, please; change places with Ness in the box to the response of	ase? //ia? equest. Wr		vw.

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

-	Do you want to come at a party tonight? Do you want to come to a party tonight?
1	A Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?
	B I'm afraid but I can't.
2	A Do you like to go skiing this weekend?
	B Yes, that is fun!
3	A Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight?
	B Yes, I love to, but I'm busy.
4	A Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?
	B I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

Complete the dialogue.

Α	Would you - like	to go out tomo	rrow?
В	Yes. Where (1)	we go?	
A	Well, (2)	we (3)	go swimming.
В	Mmm. I'm not (4)	about that	. It's a bit cold for swimming.
Α	OK. What (5)	going to an exh	nibition?
Α	Yes, that's a good (6)	. (7)	's do that.

Unit 66

Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

	Yes, thanks.**	No, please.	Yes, please. No, thanks.
1	Would you want a sandwich?	Do you like a drink?	
2	Do you need a help?	Do you want some hand?	
3	No, I'm worry, thanks.	No, don't fine.	
4	Thanks a very.	Thank you lot much.	
5	Shall me pay for the coffees.	Let I do that for you?	
6	That's much kind of you.	Thank you very very.	

Rea	d the situations, then write the dialog	ues.	Use	as many different phrases as	possible.
▶ S	omeone lends you a pen and you lose it.			m sorry, I've lost your pen.	
		В	T	iat's OK, don't worry.	
1 5	omeone asked you to post a letter	A	telitaiene		
У	esterday, but you forgot.	В			
2 Y	ou arrange to meet someone, but	Α			-
У	ou are late.	В			
3 /	ou make coffee for someone, but	Α			-
b	reak one of their cups.	В			-3
4 5	omeone says something to you,	Α			3
b	out you can't hear it.	В	muelm		-
Un	it 68				
				A. A. D. 400 (17) (17)	
Mak	e words from the letters. Use the defi				
	To have an idea about something			think	
1	What you think about something				
2	Very good			le	
3	Have a different opinion from someone	_		Si dialamanananananananananananananananananan	
4	Like one thing more than another				
5	Used to introduce your opinion			loy	
6	A bad use of money	sto	ofaev	Va	money
Un	it 69				
1 R	ewrite the underlined words but keep	the	mea	ning the same.	
	I'm sorry, Paul is out. Isn't in				
1	I can't phone her now.				
2	Is that Sue? ~ Yes, this is Sue.				
3	I'll <u>call</u> you back later.				
4	Can I speak to Anton? ~ Yes, wait a minut				
5	She texted me earlier.				
2 W	rite the phone conversation in the rig	ht o	rder	27-	
	es. Just a moment – I'll get her.			Hello?	
	ello? 🗸	1			
Н	ello, Keira. How are you?	2			
	that Cheryl?	3			
	n fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?	4			
	nanks.	5		fatfrania.	
Ye	es, speaking.	6			
	. It's Keira.	7			

70 I can use common adjectives

A Common opposites 60

















- 1 She's asleep. opp awake
- 2 The bird's dead. opp alive
- 3 He's very strong. opp weak
- 4 She's a rich woman. OPP poor
- 5 These are common names in Italy. opp unusual
- 6 This Swiss knife's very useful. opp useless
- 7 The screen is very wide. opp narrow
- 8 The children are noisy. OPP quiet

spotlight Position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after **be**. It's a **quiet** village. The village is **quiet**.

You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun.

The man is alive. NOT an alive man

1	True	or	fal	se?	Write	T	or	F
ALL .	Hue	Oi	Id	361	AALITE		O.	

- ► The River Nile is very narrow. ___F__
- 1 Julius Caesar is still alive.
- 2 People are noisy at football matches.
- 3 Dictionaries are useless.
- 4 Some people talk when they're asleep. _____
- 5 Elephants are very strong.
- 6 America is a poor country.
- 7 Toyota cars are common in Japan.
 - 8 Pasta is unusual in Italy.

Write the opposite of the bold word.

- ► They're very rich. poor
- 1 It's a useless knife.
- 2 My arms are quite strong.
- 3 Is he **alive**? _____
- 4 The people are very **poor**. ______5 It's a **noisy** place. _____
- 7 8
- 6 It's a quiet town.
 - 7 The garden's quite **wide**. ______8 That's very **common**. _____
 - 9 Is she awake?
- 10 It's quite a narrow road.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.

B Classroom habits 60

Teachers: Students: It's impossible to remember Simon I tell my students to write new Petra words in a vocabulary notebook. everything, so it's necessary I think it's really helpful. to revise things you've studied in class. Jill It's very annoying when students are late for class. Ivan I write new words on my hand, and then on my arms. It's a strange thing to do, Martin When students do activities, I and some students think have to give clear instructions. I'm mad. I don't like students who talk Carol Yoko I repeat new words four when I'm listening to other students. That's really irritating. or five times; it's the only way to remember. Jean Pierre In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another: it's very confusing. Glossary Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words. helpful useful or giving help annoying If something is annoying, it makes you possible/impossible OPP a bit angry, syn irritating 1 mad/crazy _____ clear easy to understand opp confusing 2 annoying/irritating _____ impossible not possible opp possible necessary If something is necessary, you must 3 necessary/unnecessary have it or do it. opp unnecessary 4 clear/confusing strange unusual and perhaps not normal syn odd 5 odd/strange _____ mad very unusual and not normal syn crazy it's the only way there is no other way Complete the sentences. I've got two dictionaries. One of them is unnecessary . 1 His explanation was very ______; I didn't understand anything. 2 An old man in the street was very _____ and gave me directions. 3 It's ______ to fly round the world in five hours. 4 My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he's _____ 5 I was the ______ person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked. 6 Cookery books are useful, but they aren't 7 My cat is very _____. He likes dog food more than cat food. 8 He gave me very ______ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.

9 My sister talks all the time when I'm watching TV: it's very _____

71 I can use common adverbs

A Emphasis 60

only	We use only to say 'no more than'. She was only 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.) We can walk to the station — it's only five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.)
even	We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe. It's cold here, even in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.) My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is even taller.
still	We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true. After 25 years, I still love my job. (I continue to love my job.) Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're still in London.
especially (also particularly)	We use especially to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'. We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville. (Seville was the best.) It's very hot here, especially in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)

1	Put the word in brackets in the correct	place in the sentence.
-	THE CITE WOLD IN DIGENCES IN THE CONTECT	place ill tile sellicelles.

It's six kilometres to the next town.	(only)	It'	s on	ly six	kilometi	res to	the next	town.

- 1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) ___
- 2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially)
- 3 There are three students in the class. (only)
- 4 He works on Sundays. (even)
- 5 She's at university. (still) _____
- 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is bigger. (even)

Circle the correct answer.

- ► The food is good there, only especially the fish.
- 1 He was only/even 15 when he left school.
- 2 I've seen the film five times and I even/still enjoy it.
- 3 The students are very nice, still/particularly Marcel.
- 4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.
- 5 It was cold yesterday but it's even/still colder today.
- 6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

Write the new words in your own sentences. Say them to yourself.

Complete the sentences.

-	He's ninety, but he <u>still</u> drives a car.	
1	four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.	
2	They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they	like living there.
3	I love fish, salmon.	
4	He can't drive; he's 15.	
5	Jacqui's thin, but her sister is thinner.	
6	She enjoyed the book, the first part.	



0%

a bit/a little quite very extremely absolutely really

a bit/a little	Use a bit or a little before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT a bit good) The lesson was a bit boring. It's a little warmer than yesterday.
quite	= more than a bit, but less than very The film was quite interesting. The town is quite big.
extremely	= a bit stronger than <i>very</i> Use extremely before gradable adjectives (see spotlight). I was extremely tired by 6 o'clock. We were extremely busy on Saturday.
absolutely	Use absolutely before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis. The food was absolutely delicious. The party was absolutely fantastic.
really	 very, extremely or absolutely You can use really with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs. The restaurant was really good. The weather was really terrible. We were really tired. I really liked the film.

4 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- It was quite a bit interesting.
- This programme is really/absolutely terrible.
- 1 The weather was very/absolutely nice.
- 2 Her new shoes are very/absolutely wonderful.
- 3 My sister is a bit/a little untidy.
- 4 I really/extremely want to go to Australia.
- 5 She was really/extremely friendly.
- 6 Their flat is a bit/quite nice.
- 7 The hotel was very/really good.
- 8 The boat is extremely/really enormous.

spotlight Gradable and ungradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives, e.g. good, big, bad, nice, boring, young, tired, busy

Ungradable adjectives, e.g. awful, perfect, terrible, wonderful, delicious, fantastic (= very, very good), enormous (= very, very big)

	Valence of the Valence of the Control of the Contro	The second second				
(5	Rewrite the sentences.	Use an adverb	with a similar	meaning	to the underlined	word(s)

- ► The film was a bit boring. The film was a little boring.
- ► The children were really fantastic. The children were absolutely fantastic.
- 1 He was <u>very</u> good.
- 2 The holiday was absolutely wonderful.
- 3 She's a little unfriendly.
- 4 The kitchen was extremely clean.
- 5 The room was a bit small.
- 6 Her new boyfriend is <u>really</u> awful.
- 7 They're <u>really</u> nice people.
- 8 The weather was <u>absolutely</u> terrible.

72 I can use irregular verbs

A Past tenses 6

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be was/were bring brought buy bought cost cost do did drive drove feel felt	find found fly flew forget forgot give gave go went grow grew hold held	keep kept know knew leave left lend lent put put read read ring rang	run ran see saw send sent sit sat sleep slept speak spoke spend spent	stand stood swim swam take took teach taught think thought win won write wrote
---	---	--	---	--

-				
	Circlo	tha	right	SPENIORE
•	Circle	uie	rigitt	answers.

•	Three	verbs	which	change	from	"	to '	a'	in	the	past	tense.

sit (ring) (swim) bring

1 Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense. put cost read run

2 Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense. write drive give win

3 Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense. spend stand send lend

4 Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense. know hold cost grow

5 Three verbs which form the past tense with '-ought'. teach buy bring think

Find eight more past tense verbs.

seffew no left spokedoke ptenawondide found ef el tasato

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.

This coat cost more than €500.

1 I w so tired, I s for ten hours.

2 We s across the river.

3 I r her on my mobile.

4 He w the email but f to send it.

5 They s the film last night.

6 She b a new car yesterday.

7 They s up when he came in.

8 We t a taxi, then w to the cinema.

Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?

B Past participles 60

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their **past participle** forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be been bring brought buy bought cost cost do done drive driven feel felt	find found fly flown forget forgotten give given go gone grow grown hold held	keep kept know known leave left lend lent put put read read ring rung	run run see seen send sent sit sat sleep slept speak spoken spend spent	stand stood swim swum take taken teach taught think thought win won write written
---	---	---	---	---

Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

find spend	drive X leave	bring be	know cost	keep run	•	do think	put go	fly ring	feel sleep	hold stand up	write
four	ıd		named and the second		***********					and the second	
***************************************			oliolii tirminimmentimminim								
	1 Y).							man in museum			
	***************************************			open-termovipuseum +				in mount		The transfer of the transfer o	

Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?

•	fly flown	4	take	7	speak
1	forget	5	write	8	drive
	give		know		grow
2	500				

Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

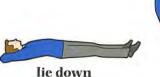
3	teach	read	swim	sleep	speak	send	drive	lend √	win	
Ha	ve you e				ABO	UT YOU	spotl	ight ever		
			e a lot of r				We of	ten use ever	(= at any ti	me before
1		an Englis	h newspa	per?				in questions		
2		a Porsch	e?				Have y	you ever met	Jonathan Mi	ills?
3		a lesson?			***************************************			I haven't.		
4		any mon	ey?		Anna Carrier and Atlanta			our sister eve i		
5	и напания	an email	to the wro	ong perso	n?		~ Yes,	she has. NOT	Y es, she eve	r has,
6		on a boa	t?		\$1000000000000000000000000000000000000					
7	***************************************	in the Me	editerrane	an Sea?	***************************************					
8		to a famo	ous persor	1?						

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?

73 I can use phrasal verbs

A Meaning 60

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.





fall over





Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give something up	He had to give up football.	stop doing something
get on with someone	I like Sue; we get on well.	have a good relationship
take off	The plane couldn't take off.	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	When Ben grows up , he wants to be a vet.	change from a child to an adult
find out something	I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.	find a fact or piece of information you need/want
go out	Let's go out this evening.	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.

Circle the correct particle.

- ► I'd like to lie up/down for a few minutes.
- 1 Can we find out/over the cost of the tickets?
- 2 Where did she grow out/up?
- 3 He fell over/on when he ran down the road.
- 4 Do you want to go out/off this evening?
- 5 Pearl wants to give on/up her job.
- 6 Do you get in/on well with your parents?

spotlight Phrasal verbs

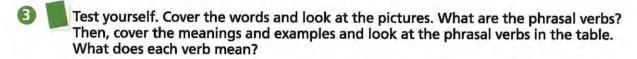
Phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. We don't use them as often in formal written English. Be careful: some have more than one meaning:

The plane couldn't take off.

You can take off your jacket.

and selections with the collect partic	ticle	part	orrect	the	with	sentences	the	Complete	2
--	-------	------	--------	-----	------	-----------	-----	----------	---

- ► Pasha doesn't want to go out this evening; she's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find ______
- 2 Everyone stood _____ when he came into the room.
- 3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get _______ very well.
- 4 She sat _____ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie _____ on the bed. 6 I told my brother to give _____smoking.
- The plane took ______ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell _____ in the street, but several people helped her.



B Grammar 6

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning	
go up	The price of petrol will go up soon.	increase, become more continue with something return to a place stop sleeping	
carry on with something	Can we carry on with the exercise?		
go back	She wants to go back to London.		
wake up	I always wake up at 7.00 a.m.		

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. it, them) it must go before the particle.



Take off your jacket.
Take your jacket off.

Take it off. (NOT Take off it.)



Could you turn on the light? Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes. Put your shoes on.

Could you turn it on? (NOT ... turn on it.)

Can	It	ry them on? (NOT try or	n them.)	Look it	up in that dictionary. (NOT Look up it.)
4	Change the bold words to <i>it</i> or <i>them</i> . Pu			ut the pronoun in the correct place.		
	•	Look up the word.	Look it up.	4	Put those socks on.	
	•	Look up both words.	Look them up.	5	Take off your shoes.	
	1	Take off your jacket.		6	Try on this shirt.	instance and the state of the state of the state of
	2	Try on these trousers		7	Turn on the lights	

	3	Turn on the TV. 8 Put your coat on.						
6	Ar	Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun it? Where? Look at the examples.						
	-	Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?						
	-	Please sit down. correct						
	1	Could I try on?						
	2	Do you want to go back?						

- 3 You can take off if you're hot.4 Look up in the dictionary.
- 5 His salary will go up soon.
 6 Do they want to stop or carry on?
- 7 Did you put on?
 8 What time do you usually wake up?
- 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Where did you grow up?
 - 2 How do you feel when you wake up?
 - 3 How often do you go out in the evenings?
 - 4 Do you get on well with people who live near you?
 - 5 When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?

74 I can use prepositions of time 6

at	a time at six o'clock at mid	lday/midnight	a mealtime at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)		
on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day			a date on September 1 st on the sixth of May		
in	a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	a season in (the) spring in (the) autum		a month, year or century in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099	

spotlight

ootiigiit a

We also use at in these phrases:

I relax at the weekend.

Some doctors work at night. NOT in the night

What are you doing at Christmas/at New Year?

- Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.
 - ▶ in the spring/February 15th/the evening
 - 1 at teatime/2005/the weekend
 - 2 in August/summer/Friday
 - 3 on April/your birthday/Saturdays
 - 4 at night/the morning/half past seven
 - 5 in autumn/the 20th century/4.00

- 6 **on** midnight/June 2nd/Sunday afternoon
- 7 at breakfast/midday/the autumn
- 8 **on** winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
- 9 in the afternoon/dinnertime/2008
- 10 at New Year/the evening/six o'clock
- Write the correct preposition in each space.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ▶ ○n Thursday morning (1)
about nine, and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the
afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great
- really sunny. (5) Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) 1997
Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton
Festival which starts (10) 6 May.

ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

٧Ł	ien do you
1	get up?
2	study English?
3	go swimming?
4	watch TV?
5	go to sleep?

Wh	n was the last time you	
6	saw your family?	

- 7 went on holiday?
- 8 went to the mountains? ______

 9 went to bed very late? _____
- 10 went to a party?

75 I can use time words and phrases

A Past, present and future 60

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

Mon	8	Jon and Trish 7.30	Mon	15	London
Tues	9	pay phone bill	Tues	16	dinner with Scott 8.00
Wed	10	lunch with Liz 1.00 meet Brian 7.45	Wed	17	•
Thur	(11)	cinema 7.15	Thur	18	Dr Holton 10.45
Fri	12	meeting 9.00 - 12.00 Wheeler's bar 7.30	Fri	19	theatre 8.00
Sat	13	stay at Gary's	Sat	20	Pete's birthday
Sun	14		Sun	21	Mum and Dad for lunch

I was in Moscow last week. I saw Jon and Trish three days ago. I had lunch with Liz yesterday. I went out with Brian last night. I'm going to the cinema this evening. I've got a meeting tomorrow morning. I'm going to stay at Gary's this weekend. Then I'm in London for three days next week. I have a doctor's appointment next Thursday. I'm seeing my parents in ten days' time.

1	True	or	fa	lse?	Write	T	or F.
	1100	٠.		1301	441166		O: .

- ▶ I was in Moscow last week. _____
- 1 I got back from Moscow four days ago. ____
- 2 I saw Jon and Trish this week.
- 3 I paid the phone bill three days ago.
- 4 I met Brian yesterday.
- 5 I was in London last week.
- 6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 7 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
- 8 I'm seeing Scott in four days' time.
- 9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week's time.
- 10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday.

Glossary

last week = April 1-7 NOT the last week this week = April 8 - 14next week = April 15 - 21 NOT the next week last night or vesterday evening NOT yesterday night/last evening appointment a meeting at a fixed time. often with one person, usually for work or with a doctor, dentist, etc.

Complete the sentences.

- 1 She saw Paul about three days ______. 5 She can't come. She's got a dentist's
- 2 I wrote Pete's birthday in my _____.
- 4 He wants to come in a week's _____
- 3 She rang me at 10 o'clock last ______ . 6 I'm going to Italy _____ week.
- Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.
 - ▶ I had lunch with Liz a week ago. 1 _____ on Thursday evening. 2 five days ago.

3 last weekend.

- 4 _____ tomorrow morning. 5 _____ in three days' time.
- 6 this weekend.

B Words and phrases often confused 60

before/after					
	10.00 11.00 12.00 Lunch 2.00 3.00 4.00 We did some shopping before lunch. We went for a coffee after lunch.				
at the moment/ in a minute	I'm very busy at the moment. = I'm very busy now. NOT in this moment I'll speak to you in a minute. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.				
soon/later	I'm going home soon . = I'm going home in a short time from now. Can I talk to you later? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?				
until	We worked until ten o'clock. = We stopped work at 10.00. NOT by 10.00 I want to stay here until July. = I don't want to go before July.				
for/since	I moved to this house. Sarah was born. Sarah is now five years old.				
	I've lived here since Sarah was born. I've lived here for five years.				

4 Circle the correct answer.

- Dinner will be ready at (in) a minute.
- 1 I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
- 2 We went home before/after work and watched TV.
- **3** I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
- 4 She's in the library at/in the moment.
- 5 I haven't seen her for/since last week.
- 6 I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
- 7 She has worked here for/since seven years.
- 8 The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

spotlight for and since

We use **for** with a period of time (**for** two weeks, six months, etc.), and **since** with a point in time (**since** 2003, last year, I came to England, etc.). We often use these words with the present perfect. I've been at university **for a year**. I've known Joe **since** 2002.

5 Complete the sentences. Use soon, later, before, at, in, until, for or since.

- I had a rest <u>after</u> lunch.
 She waited _______ 7.00, then went home.
 He's been here _______ three weeks.
 I'm getting tired. Can we go home ______ ?
- 4 Can you help me? ~ Yes, I'll be with you _____ a minute.
- 5 What are you doing _____ the moment?
- 6 We haven't seen them _____ last summer.
- 7 I wrote the email _____ I went out.
- 8 I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out _____ this week?

Translate the words in bold in this unit into your own language.

76 I can use prepositions of place and movement

A In, at, on 60

at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens Let's meet at the bank/at the bus stop. I saw him at the match/at the party at home/at work/at school.



in a three-dimensional space in a box, a cupboard in a room, an office, a flat in a garden, a park



in a big area in a village/town/city in the countryside in London/Spain/Asia/the world

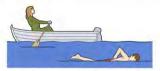




on the road, the coast, the river



on the table, the wall on the first floor



in or on? He's in the river. She's on the river.

- Circle the correct preposition.
 - ► I live in/on Canada.
 - 1 She's not in/on her office.
 - 2 The photos are in/on the wall.
 - 3 We met in/at a golf match.
 - 4 We stayed in/on a lovely village.
 - **5** She's swimming in/on the pool.
 - 6 Barcelona is in/on the coast.
 - 7 We live at/in the countryside.

- 8 There are too many cars in/on the road.
- 9 Dinner is on/at the table.
- 10 They're sitting in/at the garden.
- 11 The books are on/in the table.
- 12 I saw her in/at the bus stop.
- 13 The number is in/on the door.
- 14 I spoke to her in/at the party.

ABOUT YOU

- Complete the questions with in, on, or at.
 - Which country do you live __in__?
 - 1 Do you live _____ a village, a town, or a city?
 - 2 Do you live _____ a flat or a house?
 - 3 Is your town ____ a river?
 - 4 Which floor is your bedroom ____?
 - 5 Do you like walking _____ the countryside?
 - 6 Are you learning English _____ school, ____ work, or _____ an English-speaking country?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

B Other prepositions 60



The people are in front of the garage. The postman is between mum and dad. The adults are behind the children. The tree is near the house.

The office is above the garage. The garage is below the office. The seat is **next to** the bus stop. The bus stop is opposite the garage.

4 True	or	false?	Write	Tor	F.
--------	----	--------	-------	-----	----

- ▶ The tree's opposite the house. __F
- 1 The blue car's near the house.
- 2 The big window is above the door.
- 4 The postman's next to mum.
- 5 The seat's between the house and the tree. ...
- 6 The children are behind mum and dad.
- 7 The girl is in front of the postman. _____
- 3 The people are opposite the garage. 8 The front door's below the big window.
 - 9 The bus stop's next to the green car.

Complete the sentences.

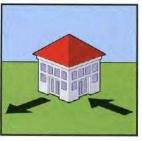
- The tree's behind the blue car.
- 1 The bus stop is _____ the seat.
- 2 The blue car is _____ the tree.
- 3 The boy's standing _____ dad. 4 The green car's _____ the bus stop.
- 5 The bus stop is _____ the green car and the seat.
- 6 The seat is _____ the garage.
- 7 The postman's _____ dad.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

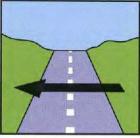
- 1 What's opposite the building where you live?
- 2 What's behind your building?
- 3 What's next to it? 4 Are there any shops near it?
- 5 What's above your living room?
- 6 What's below your bedroom?

Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture. What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?

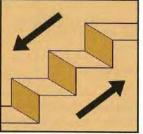
C Prepositions of movement 60







go across



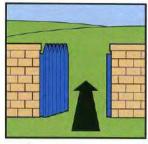
go down



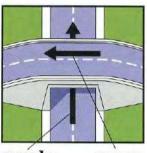
go along



go past the church



go through



go under

go over

go up

Circle the correct word.

- Don't run down the hill church.
- 1 Walk under the trees/field.

go into

- 2 Drive along the city/motorway.
- 3 Don't go across the river/gate.
- 4 Go into the beach/shop.
- 5 Walk through the gate/stairs.

- 6 I ran past the bus stop/countryside.
- 7 Go up the floor/mountain.
- 8 Don't run down the stairs/bridge.
- 9 Walk out of the building/hill.
- 10 We flew over the sky/field.

Omplete 1-10 with a preposition in each sentence.

- ► Go straight on, along this road.
- 1 We shouted hello as the boat went ______ the bridge.
- 2 She went _____ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
- 3 They drove _____ the hill to look at the view from the top.
- 4 We walked _____ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
- 5 We drove ______ a restaurant on the way to the station.
- 6 He came _____ the door and fell over; it was very funny.
- 7 I came _____ the bank and saw the accident.
- 8 We went _____ the hill, into the valley below.
- 9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran _____ the road.
- 10 We swam _____ the bridge, so they couldn't see us.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?

77 I can use link words (1)

A And, also, too, as well 60

The city centre is di	rty and very noisy.	And links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,). Also goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be can, but before the main verb.	
The centre is dirty,	and it's also very expensive. and it also costs a lot to live there.		
The centre is dirty,	and it's very expensive and it costs a lot to live there as well.	Too and as well go at the end of the sentence. Too and as well are more informal than also.	

		Too and as well are more informal than also.
) A	Are also, too or as well in the correct positions? Po	ut a tick (✔) or a cross (✗).
-	You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is	useful. X
1	그 이 그녀는 회사가 있다면 하다가 되었다. 이 교육도 없는 아이지에서 남아들이 다 하나면 하는 사이에 다른 사람이 되었다.	
2	들어지도 이 집에 이렇게 하는 이렇게 되어 되었다. 나라 살아 가장 하는 사람이 되었다. 그리고 하는데 없다.	
3	We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well.	
4	I cleaned the house and washed also the car.	
5	She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Raven	na too.
6		
) P	out the words in the correct order to make senten	ices.
		ABOUT YOU
•	too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter	
1	yoghurt / also / like / and I	
	I often eat ice cream	
2	but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot I enjoy	
3	German / as well / understand / I can / and	
	I can speak English	10 000
4	also / but I / music / of books / listen to	
	I read a lot	incommendation in the state section will be incommendation if the contention of the
5	I play	

► The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.

B Reason and result 60



I went into the café because it was raining. I went into the café because of the rain.	because (of) comes before the reason because + clause because of + noun
I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain. = I went in the café because it was raining.	(in order) to comes before the reason (in order) to + verb
It was raining, so I went into the café. = I went in the café because it was raining.	so comes before the result so + clause There is usually a comma (,) before so.

Circle the correct word.

- I took my umbrella because to it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home because/because of the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris so/to see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out because/because of I had to study.
- 4 It was my birthday, so/because we had a party.
- 5 She went to the market to/because get a book.
- 6 She lost her passport, so/because she couldn't go to China.

Write because, because of, so, or to.

- ► The were late because of the traffic.
- 1 I'm going to the chemist's _____ get some aspirins.
- 2 It was a nice day, _____ we went out.
- 3 I bought the house _____ the beautiful view.
- 4 I don't go to the theatre very often ______ it's too expensive.
- 5 I'm going out now, ______I'll phone you tomorrow.
- 6 She went to the centre _____ meet her friend.
- 7 I think he married her _____ her money.
- 8 Are you studying English ______ get a better job?

78 I can use link words (2)

A When and if (future) 60

I'll post the letter **when** I go out. (I'm sure I'm going out later.)
I'll post the letter **if** I go out. (I'm not sure I'm going out later.)
OR
When I go out,
If I go out,
I'll post the letter.
The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form.
NOT I'll post the letter when I will go out.

Circle the correct answer.

- I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure(not sure)that I'll see her.
- 1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure/not sure that he'll see her.
- 2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
- 3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure/not sure that I can come.
- 4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure/not sure that he's going home.
- 5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure/not sure that we'll get on the train.
- 6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure/not sure that you'll take a map.

2 Complete the sentences with if or when.

- If you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
 it's cold tonight, we'll have soup.
 I'm 30, I'll have a party.
 I'll call you you forget to ring me.
- 4 We'll leave _____ it stops raining.
- 5 He'll do it _____ he wakes up tomorrow.
- 6 _____ you lose your key, you can phone me.

B When and while 60

I phoned the doctor $\frac{\mathbf{when}}{\mathbf{while}}$ I was on holiday.	= in a period when I was on holiday
past X	nc
on holiday (a period of time)	
When (but not while) also means 'at that mom	ent' or 'at that time'.
I gave Jack the money when he got home. NOT while he got home.	= at the time I met him
gave him the money	
past X X	nc
Jack got home	

3	Ci	rcle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are corre	ect.				
	•	The lesson started when while the students sat down.					
	1	Come and see me while/when you arrive.					
	2	I'll help with the children when/while you get home.					
	3	3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.					
	4	She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.					
	5	I'll wash the car while/when you're at work.					
	6	Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?					
C	Α	sequence of actions 6					
		and us had a scall, vice week.	Glossary				
	we wer tou	and we had a really nice week. Firstly , spent a few days in Budapest, then we nt to Vienna. Afterwards, we went on a r of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for ouple of nights.	firstly You say firstly when you are talking about the first thing in a list. (also first or first of all) (and) then/after that You say				
		it's very easy to make. First of all, you fry the meat, and then you fry some onions and add them to the meat. After that, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. Finally, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.	(and) then or after that when you are talking about the next thing in a list. (also afterwards) finally You say finally when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually if it is a long list of four or more things.				
4		omplete the texts with link words. Don't use the same w					
	Α	For this job, Firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1)	you have				
		to go and talk to the boss. (2), you meet o company. (3), you have to do a written tes					
	В	[40] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18] 18 [18					
	Ь	B (4), I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.					
5	Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.						
		► I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises. First of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.					
	1						
	2	2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.					
	3	We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. /					
	4						

shopping list.

6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

First of all, [

79 I can use 'have' and 'have got'

A Have and have got 60

My brother has/has got a house in the country. His wife has/'s got an art studio there.	If you have/have got something, it is yours; it belongs to you.
She has/has got a bad cold at the moment.	Use have/have got to describe illness.
They have/'ve got two young daughters.	Use have/have got to describe relationships.
Both girls have/have got blonde hair.	Use have/have got to describe appearance.

spotlight have and have got

Have is a full verb. Use **do**, **does** and **did** in questions, short answers and negatives. **Do** they **have** a car? ~ Yes, they **do**. I **didn't have** a job last year. In negatives and questions, **have got** is more common than **have** with **do**. We don't use **have got** in short answers. **Have** they **got** a car? He **hasn't got** a bike. He **doesn't have** a bike. (less common)

1	Change h	ave to	the correct	form of	have	got in	each	sentence.
---	----------	--------	-------------	---------	------	--------	------	-----------

- I have an old car. I've got an old car.

 1 She has blue eyes.
- 2 They have a small dog.
- 3 I don't have a mobile phone.
- 4 He doesn't have any money.
- 5 Do you have any sisters?
- 6 Does she have a flat in town?

Correct the mistakes.

- ► He have a car. He's got a car. OR He has a car.
- 1 She got any children?
- 2 They has got a lovely garden.
- 3 Have she got long hair?
- 4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
- 5 Have you a computer?
- 6 We don't got any friends here.

Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

•	Have you got a car?	If so, what kind?
1	Have you a bike?	If so, when do you use it?
2	you have a computer?	If so, what kind?
3	your parents got a dog?	If so, what's its name?
4	you got an English dictionary?	If so, what's it called?
5	you have any English-speaking frie	nds? If so, who are they?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Have + noun 60

have breakfast/lunch/dinner NOT the breakfast/the lunch/the dinner	We had lunch in a pizzeria.
have a wash/a shower/a bath	I had a quick shower before I left.
have a drink/something to eat	I had a drink with Joe last night, Let's have something to eat .
have a swim/a walk/a run activities you do because you enjoy them	I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	We had a great time in Kyoto.
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	Have a nice weekend. ~ Yeah, you too.
have a break = stop work for a short period and relax have a rest = relax and do nothing	Let's have a break for ten minutes. I'm going to have a rest this weekend.

You can't use have got in these expressions. Not Let's have got a break.

Make four more groups of phrases with have from the words below.

swim shower	breakfast weekend	holiday break 🗸	bath dinner	journey walk	rest 🗸 wash	lunch run
Group 1	Group	2 Gr	oup 3	Group 4	Gro	up 5
rest						
break					- illine	

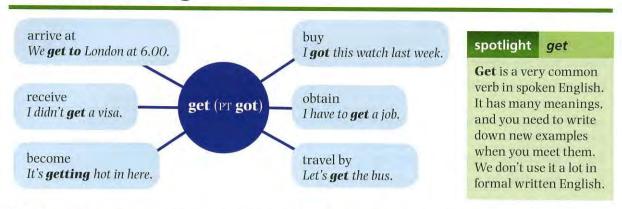
Complete the postcard.

Dear Caria	
We're having a great ▶ time here in F	Parati. Yesterday we had a (1)
round the town and bought a few things. In the	e evening we had a (2) in the bar
you recommended. Afterwards, we had (3)	in a nice fish restaurant. We're going
to have a (4) in the sea th	is morning, then maybe do some more shopping this
afternoon. I think we'll have a (5)	after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in
Rio, and have a good (6)ba	ack to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you soon.
Love, Nicky	
Love, Nicky	

Complete the sentences.

•	I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
1	Would you like to have something to?
2	I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a this evening.
3	We have a twenty-minute between the lessons.
4	All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad to work.
5	Did you have a good in London yesterday?
6	Have a nice See you on Monday.
7	They had a fantastic in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
0	Labyrays have a shower in the summer but in winter Lorefor to have a

80 I can use 'get' 66



Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.

•	He becomes angry if you're late.	He gets angry if you're late.	
1	Did you receive my message?		
2	I must buy some new clothes.		
3	We arrived home late last night.		
4	It's becoming cold.		
5	I received three letters today.		
6	Where did you buy that bag?		
7	He needs to obtain a job.		
8	Do you want to travel by train?		

Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

He gets angry if you're late.	become
3 3 1 3	

Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.

	There weren't any buses, so we got the train
1	Do you want to walk or?
	What time did you?
3	Those shoes are lovely. Where did you?
4	Could you close the window? It's
5	I must go now, it's
6	She sent me an email but I didn't
7	I need a map of the town centre. Where can I?
8	I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to

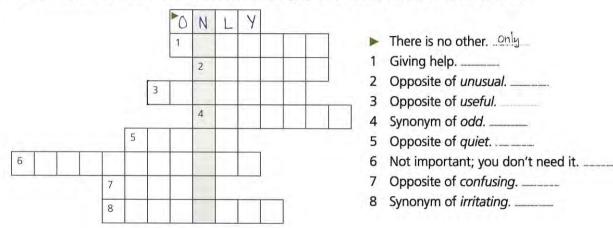
Review: Language

Unit 70

1 Describe each picture with an adjective.



2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?



Unit 71

1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.

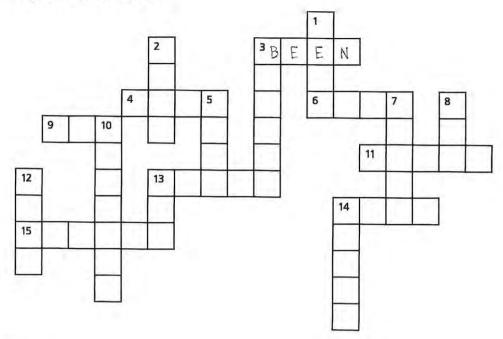
even	absolutely	still	quite
only	especially 🗸	a bit	

- ► I play tennis a lot, in the summer.
 _especially
- 1 We couldn't play the match with ten players.
- 2 He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time.
- 3 The food is fantastic in that restaurant.
- 4 Max didn't like the film, but I thought it was good.
- 5 The last film was good, but this is better.
- 6 My English is getting better.

2 Complete the sentences in a suitable v	way	e	suitable	a :	in a	sentences	the	lete	Comp	2
--	-----	---	----------	-----	------	-----------	-----	------	------	---

- There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work
 I go swimming, even in
- 2 It was August, but the weather was really
- ------
- 3 The service is a bit ______ but the food is really good.
- 4 She can't drive; she's only
- 5 By the end of the evening I was quite
- 6 I like her new boyfriend; he's extremely

Complete the crossword.



Ac	ross ->	
3	She hasn't	been to the dentist for a year.
		that book?
6	They	the bus to work this morning
		the books on the shelf.
	yours?	these keys on the floor. Are they
13	He	for eight hours last night.
14	1	her an email yesterday.
15	He	to post the letter.

AALI A
We to the cinema on Saturday.
Have you his new film?
Shesome new jeans at the weekend.
Have you your homework?
How long have you her?
Heten kilometres this morning.
I the book was very good.
She home at 8 o'clock this morning.
We on the floor because there were no chairs.
I all my money on holiday.

Unit 73

1 Make sentences from the words.

-	morning / I / woke / this / early / up I woke up early this morning.
1	in / grew / I / up / a / village
2	you / down / why / sit / don't / ?
3	find / I / address / out / must / their
4	over / street / the / fell / in / she
5	night / you / out / last / did / go / ?
6	light / on / could / the / you / turn / ?
7	look / in / up / dictionary / it / your
8	them / 1 / try / could / on / 2

the underlined	words for a phrasal v	erb with the same	e meaning.		
			3		
the commence of the commence of the contract of					
4 The plane couldn't leave the ground and start flying.					
We have a good relationship.					
r misir ans ream <u>c</u>	STITLING WITH EXCICISE 2.				
ords and phrases	in the correct place	in the table.			
orning / Mor	nday morning Decer	oher my hirthda	v hreakfast		
		The state of the s			
	ance o clock — coo.	the freehend	rriddy evening		
	At	On			
e text, then com	California and went to				
near Malaga. I sta	ayed in one of the room	us and looked for s	ome-		
	also worked there - and	six months later w	e got		
The Arthur Day of the Control of the	wall house near the hot	el and one month a	4		
The Arthur Day of the Control of the		el and one month a	4		
d out that we're for him - or her.	wall house near the hot going to have a baby.	iel and one month a We are now prepari	4		
d out that we're for him - or her. ndy spoke Spanish l	wall house near the hot going to have a baby. Defore I went to live in	el and one month a We are now prepari Spain	ng a		
d out that we're for him - or her. ady spoke Spanish l ed in one of the roo	wall house near the hot going to have a baby. Defore I went to live in Doms in the hotel until L	el and one month a We are now prepari Spain	ng a		
d out that we're for him - or her. Idy spoke Spanish led in one of the row a Spanish man after	wall house near the hot going to have a baby. Defore I went to live in oms in the hotel until Ler I	el and one month a We are now prepari Spain	ng a		
d out that we're for him - or her. Idy spoke Spanish hed in one of the room a Spanish man after red in the house I be	mall house near the hot going to have a baby. Defore I went to live in the hotel until Ler I cought since I	el and one month a We are now prepari Spain	ng a		
d out that we're for him - or her. Idy spoke Spanish led in one of the room a Spanish man after a fed in the house I be a fed in Portugal for	wall house near the hot going to have a baby. Defore I went to live in oms in the hotel until Ler I	el and one month a We are now prepari Spain	ng a		
	remove my jacket? ped smoking last y rice of flats is incre ves in Paris but wan lane couldn't leave ave a good relation I finish this I can couldn't the sixth of er Tuesday orning the text, then com years ago I left Spanish very well, near Malaga. I state to live. I found a otel for two year hotel on the Alga	remove my jacket? take off ped smoking last year. rice of flats is increasing all the time. res in Paris but wants to return to Rome. lane couldn't leave the ground and start fly ave a good relationship. I finish this I can continue with Exercise 2. Monday morning Decen the the sixth of March half past five er Tuesday three o'clock 2007 At Orning At Ornin	ped smoking last year		

last night tomorr yesterday afternoon	ow evening today 🗸 this evening tom	last week orrow morning	next Monday two days ago	in ten days' time
1 2 3 Past	4 ▶ ±odo		, 7 American	8 9 Future
nit 76				
	er to make preposition 5 wodn		40	
1 revo				00
	7 tenx ot			/e
3 rean			12 gorini	A Procession of the Park of th
4 beavo				
1 I live <u>below</u> / 2 Jo ran	the parl	k.		
	- Commence and a second			
the world ✓ scho	ne correct columns. ool the table my all match work to	town the wa	all home the second flo	Germany oor the bedroon
the world ✓ scho	ool the table my	town the wa	home the second flo	Germany oor the bedroom
the world ✓ schoothe	ool the table my all match work t	town the wa	the second flo	Germany oor the bedroon
the world school the coast a football In the world	ool the table my all match work t	town the wa	the second flo	Germany oor the bedroon
the world school the coast a football In The world The world	ool the table my all match work t	town the wa	the second flo	Germany oor the bedroon
the world school the coast a football In The world The world Match 1 – 8 with a – i	ool the table my all match work to	town the wa	the second flo	or the bedroom
the world school the coast a football In the world the world The world Watch 1 – 8 with a – i We went to Rio last y	ool the table my all match work to	town the wa	the second flo	creet life too.
the world school the coast a footbal In The world The world Match 1 – 8 with a – i We went to Rio last y We decided to go in	At At At Cear because	town the wa	we loved the st	creet life too. back next year.
the world school the coast a footbook In The world Match 1 – 8 with a – i We went to Rio last y We decided to go in the cool of the c	At At At Cear because	town the wa he countryside	we loved the st	reet life too. back next year.
In the coast a footbal In the world The world Match 1 – 8 with a – i We went to Rio last y We decided to go in a My mother decided to	At At At At Year becauseC September because ofo o come and weren't working, so oort to	town the wa he countryside	we loved the st I think we'll go we wanted to v see the country	reet life too. back next year.

f we went to São Paolo as well.

g the weather; it's cooler then.

i we also took her sister.

h meet us.

6 We drove to São Paolo in order to

8 There are still many things to see, so ___

7 The food was great, and _____

becaus	e too ✓	as well	because of	also	to s	0	
He first be Chinese, I (2) (3) people we (5)	ecame interest out she has live s ere so friendly ving China, bu	ed in the langed in Britain for study Chinese got a job, tea and life was g Peter decided	or most of her e. Hua went th ching English. great. Last mo	life. Peter ere last ye They love onth, Hua f a and go t	moved to ar and go d living the cound a notate the count and a notate the	girlfrier o Beijin ot a job nere (4) ew job	nd, Hua. She's half g two years ago in a bank, and hethe in Hong Kong,
If When While	you get to t you're travel you can cho you are wair you get off, you feel ill d	he airport, 🗸 ling on a lon	g flight, t on the plane, ight, iht,	tell ti go to sit no sit in don" alwa	the depa t leave ar	oassy. ont who arture lo sything comfort	on the plane. able clothes.
1 2 3 4 5 6 Complet	e the text wi	th words fr					
(2) too. (3) that!) (4) .	I'm getti I'm in t I h , I look	ng ready to o he shower, I ave a shave a I decide wha	go out for the often listen to and put on son at to wear: usu	music and ne expens ally a shirt	sing alor ive afters and som	ng; oh, have. (I ne casua	I have a shower. And yes, and I wash my hair My girlfriend really loves al trousers. And then everything's OK. I want

	CI	ircle the correct word or phrase.	
	•	What time do you have (unch) a lunch?	
	1	Did you have/had a wash before dinner?	
	2	We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon	
	3	Have you got/Did you have a good weekend?	
	4	Do/Have you got any children?	
	5	We hadn't/didn't have the same office last year.	
	6	We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.	
	7	Can I have rest/a rest? I'm really tired.	
	8	I had/was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.	
2	Or	ne word is missing. Where from? Write it at the e	nd of the sentence.
	•	It was sunny at midday, so we had in the garden. lunc	h
	1	We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson	Market Ma
	2	We had something eat at the beach.	-
	3	My sister got blonde hair.	
	4	I was hot, so I had a before dinner.	
	5	We had a day at work. I hate my job!	and the second s
	6	Have a lovely in the Caribbean!	
	7	I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't any money.	
	8	On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.	
U	ni	nit 80	
1	Wi	hat meaning does the verb get have in each sente entence next to the correct verb.	ence? Write the number of the
	ò	arrive obtain buy 1 travel by	receive become
		A	ABOUT YOU
	1	Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?	
	2	Are you trying to get a new job?	
	3	Do you get tired in hot weather?	
	4	How many text messages do you get every day?	
		Are you getting taller?	
		What did you get for your last birthday?	
	7	Where did you get the shoes you're wearing?	
		How often do you get the train to school or work?	N W Annual Control of Manager Co
	9	What time did you get home last night?	

2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.

198 REVIEW: LANGUAGE

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
advise	advice
act	actor, actress
advertise	advert/advertisement
agree	agreement
apologize	apology
arrange	arrangement
attach	attachment
begin	beginning
believe	belief
build	building, builder
choose	choice
climb	climbing
collect	collection
compose	composer
dance	dance, dancing, dancer
deliver	delivery
depart	departure
design	designer
disagree	disagreement
discuss	discussion
draw	drawing
drive	driver, driving
educate	education
enter	entrance, entry
examine	exam/examination
explain	explanation
fail	failure
feel	feeling
fly	flight, flying
grow	growth
hate	hatred
hear	hearing
insure	insurance
invite	invitation
manage	manager
mean	meaning

Verb	Noun
move	movement
own	owner
park	parking
pay	payment
perform	performance, performer
permit	permission
prefer	preference
print	printer, printout, printing
pronounce	pronunciation
read	reading, reader
recommend	recommendation
refuse	refusal
report	report, reporter
reserve	reservation
respond	response
ride	riding, rider
run	run, runner, running
serve	service
shoot	shooting
sign	signature
sing	singer, singing, song
smoke	smoke, smoking
spell	spelling
study	study, student
suggest	suggestion
swim	swim, swimming
teach	teacher, teaching
think	thinking, thought
travel	travelling, travel
walk	walk, walking
wash	wash, washing
weigh	weight
win	winner

Test yourself. Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?

2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
angry	anger
able, unable	ability, inability
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
comfortable,	comfort
uncomfortable	C. B. Conney Service
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
dirty	dirt
eastern	east
electric, electrical	electricity
excited, exciting	excitement
famous	fame
foggy	fog
friendly, unfriendly	friend, friendship
geographical	geography
lucky, unlucky	luck
happy, unhappy	happiness
healthy, unhealthy	health
historic, historical	history
humid	humidity
hungry	hunger
cy	ice
11	illness
ndustrial	industry
ntelligent	intelligence
cind , unkind	kindness
azy	laziness
ong	length

Adjective	Noun
mad	madness
medical	medicine
musical	music
mistaken	mistake
noisy	noise
northern	north
possible, impossible	possibility
painful	pain
peaceful	peace
personal	person
political	politics, politician
religious	religion
sad	sadness
safe	safety
scientific	science, scientist
southern	south
strong	strength
sunny	sun, sunshine
true	truth
various	variety
violent	violence
weak	weakness
western	west
wide	width
windy	wind
wooden	wood
young	youth

3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

answer
brush
call
cash
change
charge
chat
check
circle
cook
copy
cost

cough
cut
delay
divorce
download
drink
email
end
fall
guide
hate
hope

jump
label
laugh
look
love
mark
matter
microwave
name
need
offer
phone

post
pull
push
queue
rain
repair
reply
request
research
rest
ring
share

shave snow star start stay taste text tour use visit waste work

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
confusion	confuse	confusing, confused
death	die	dead
employment	employ	employed, unemployed
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable
excitement	excite	exciting, excited
help	help	helpful
heating	heat	hot
interest	interest	interested, interesting
knowledge	know	known, unknown
location	locate	located
marriage	marry/get married	married
organization	organize	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
rent	rent	rented
retirement	retire	retired
sleep	sleep	asleep
speech, speaking, speaker	speak	spoken
surprise	surprise	surprised, surprising
writing, writer	write	written
worry	worry	worried, worrying

5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective
annoy	annoyed, annoying
boil	boiled, boiling
bore	bored, boring
clean	clean
close	closed
complete	complete
correct	correct
empty	empty
freeze	frozen, freezing
frighten	frightened, frightening

Verb	Adjective
include	included
irritate	irritated, irritating
lose	lost
open	open
relax	relaxed, relaxing
shut	shut
tidy	tidy
tire	tired, tiring
wake up	awake

Common irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
lie	lan	lain
lose	lay	lost
make	made	7
57756		made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
overtake	overtook	overtaken
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore (up)	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Answer key

Answer key

Unit 1

- 1 1 two hundred
 - 2 three hundred and forty
 - 3 twenty-two
 - 4 42,500
 - 5 one thousand two hundred
 - 6 two thousand three hundred and fifty
- 2 1 eight
 - 2 twenty
 - 3 sixty-seven
 - 4 fifty
 - 5 a/one hundred and nineteen
 - 6 two hundred and forty-four
 - 7 a/one thousand
 - 8 five thousand and fifty-six
 - 9 eleven thousand three hundred and one
- 3 1 about a/one hundred euros
 - 2 about ten students
 - 3 about thirty years
 - 4 about five hundred
 - 5 about two thousand
 - 6 about eighty people
 - 7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
 - 8 about a/one million

Unit 2

- 1 1 nine fifteen 5 three forty-five 2 ten twenty-five 6 seven twenty
 - 3 three thirty-five 7 two thirty
 - 4 eleven forty-five 8 four forty
- 2 1 quarter past seven
 - 2 half past nine
 - 3 twenty-five to twelve
 - 4 ten to four
 - 5 twenty-five past eight
 - 6 three minutes past one
 - 7 quarter to three
 - 8 seventeen minutes past four
- 4 15 2D 3D 4S 5S 6D 7S 8S
- 5 Answers from a British person
 - 1 They open at nine a.m.
 - 2 No, they don't.
 - 3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
 - 4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
 - 5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
 - 6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

- Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
 - 2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
 - 3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 2 1 Tuesday
- 6 April
- 2 September
- 7 February 8 winter
- 3 summer 4 December
- 9 Thursday
- 5 Saturday
- 10 August
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 September.
 - 2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
 - 3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
 - 4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
 - 5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third
- 6 sixteenth
- 2 twentieth
- 7 fourteenth
- 3 fifth
- 8 thirteenth
- 4 first
- 9 second
- 5 eighth
- 6 1 April the tenth. on The tenth of April.
 - April the eleventh. or The eleventh of April.
 - 3 March the fourth. or The fourth of March.
 - 4 April the sixth. or The sixth of April.
 - 5 April the seventeenth. or The seventeenth of April.
 - 6 March the thirty-first. or The thirty-first of March.
 - 7 March the twenty-first. or The twenty-first of March.
 - 8 April the twenty-third. or The twentythird of April.
- 7 1 The third of February. or February the third.
 - 2 July the fourth. or The fourth of July.
 - 3 The tenth of December. or December the tenth.
 - 4 August the twelfth. or The twelfth of August.
 - 5 The fifteenth of January. or January the fifteenth.
 - 6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
 - 7 The twenty-first of May. or May the twenty-first.

- 8 November the thirtieth. or The thirtieth of November.
- 9 The twenty-second of April. or April the twenty-second.
- 10 Twenty fifteen, or Two thousand and fifteen.
- 11 Your own answer
- 12 Your own answer

1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9F

- 2 1 Britain
- 6 Africa
- 2 Europe
- 7 The Middle East
- 3 Central
- 8 Asia
- 4 Far
- 9 Australasia
- 5 South
- 3 1 France, French
 - 2 Germany, German
 - 3 Spain, Spanish
 - 4 Portugal, Portuguese
 - 5 Italy, Italian
 - 6 The Czech Republic, Czech
 - 7 Poland, Polish
 - 8 Hungary, Hungarian
 - 9 Russia, Russian
 - 10 Greece, Greek
 - 11 Turkey, Turkish
- 4 -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian -ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English
 - -an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

Unit 5

11x 2/ 3x 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ 9 x 10 / 11 x 12 /

- 2 1 board pen
- 4 pencil sharpener
- 2 cassette player
- 5 piece of paper
- 3 noticeboard
- 6 CD player
- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - I've got a rubber.
- I haven't got a noticeboard.
- I've got a desk. I've got a table.
- I haven't got a ruler.
- I've got a chair.
- I haven't got a board.
- I haven't got a cassette
- player.

Unit 6

- 1 1 indefinite 5 past participle
 - 2 noun
- 6 plural
- 3 preposition
- 7 verbs
- 4 an irregular
- 8 adverbs

- 7 Today/quickly 211
 - 2 lessons 8 asked
 - 9 spoke 3 young

 - 4 a 10 class
 - 5 from/in 11 I think he's in the wrong class.
 - 6 the

Unit 7

- 1 1f 2g 3a 4d 5b 6e
- 5 right/correct 2 1 called
 - 2 pronounce 6 opposite
- 7 does
- 3 How do 4 between
- 8 explain

Unit 8

- 1 1 What do you do in your country?
 - 2 Where do you come from?
 - 3 Could I have your address?
 - 4 What's your family name?
 - 5 What's your postcode?
 - 6 How old are your children?
 - 7 Have you got any children?
 - 8 What's your first name?
- 2 1 family
- 5 could/can
- 2 first
- 6 postcode
- 3 from
- 7 do
- 4 Whereabouts/ Where exactly?
- 8 married 9 old

- 3 Answers from a Greek person 5 11363
 - 1 Anna 2 Greece
- 6 I'm a teacher.
- 3 Athens
- 7 No, I'm single.
- 4 1 Kipseli
- 8 I'm 30.
- 11363 Athens Greece

Unit 9

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T 10 F 11 F 12 T
- 2 Your own answers

- 1 1 daughter
- 6 husband
- 2 nephew
- 7 grandmother
- 3 niece
- 8 uncle
- 4 sister-in-law 5 cousin
- 9 aunt
- 2 1 sister
- 10 relatives
- 2 wife
- 7 grandmother 8 granddaughter
- 3 niece
- 9 cousin
- 4 relative
- 10 parent
- 5 daughter
- 11 aunt
- 6 sister-in-law
- 4 Your own answers
- 5 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6F 7F 8T 9T

- 6 1 I was born in 1989.
 - 2 We spend a lot of time together.
 - 3 My girlfriend is older than me.
 - 4 There are six of us in my family.
 5 Lam the youngest in my family.
 - 5 I am the youngest in my family.
 - 6 I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.
- 7 Answers from a Turkish person
 - 1 There are six people in my family.
 - 2 1963.
 - 3 I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
 - 4 I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
 - 5 No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

- 1 1 lie down 5 sit down 2 fall over 6 get on 3 ride 7 run 4 climb 8 stand up
- 2 1 stand 6 jumped 2 walk 7 rode 3 climb 8 ran, fell 4 dance 9 got, got
 - 5 lie
- 4 1 carry 5 touch 9 hold 2 turn off 6 drop 10 push 3 put down 7 pick up 11 shut 4 close 8 break 12 open
- 5 1 touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
 - 2 pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
 - 3 break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
 - 4 pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
 - 5 turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
 - 6 drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2 7 carry a door 2, close a door 1
 - 8 pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

Unit 12

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6T 7F 8T 9T 10T 11T 12F 13T 14F
- 2 1 wrist 5 shoulder 2 stomach 6 eyes 3 neck 7 bottom 4 finger
- 3 1 chin 6 face 2 stomach 7 nose 3 chest 8 bottom 4 tooth/teeth 9 waist
 - 5 back

Unit 13

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7F 8F
- 2 1 height 4 weighs 2 good-looking 5 fat 3 slim 6 beautiful
- 4 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair. or I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
 - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy. or Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
 - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly. or My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
 - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache. or My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache.
 - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair. or My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- 5 1 medium-length, short
 - 2 blonde, black, brown, grey
 - 3 straight, wavy, curly
 - 4 beard, moustache
 - 5 brown
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 It's short.
 - 2 It's red.
 - 3 It's straight.
 - 4 I've got a beard.
 - 5 No, my eyes are blue.
- 7 1b 2e 3i 4h 5c 6f 7a 8g
- 8 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - 1 Pablo (my nephew).
 - 2 Ester (my mother).
 - 3 Ezequiel (my nephew).
 - 4 Berta (my grandmother).
 - 5 Pedro (my father).
 - 6 Sol (my niece).
 - 7 Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).
- 10 The police are looking for Y.
- 11 The other man is in his mid-forties/is middleaged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

- 1 1 funny 5 clever 2 quiet 6 friendly 3 relaxed 7 laugh 4 nice
- 2 1 unfriendly 5 funny 2 intelligent 6 serious 3 horrible 7 relaxed 4 stupid 8 kind

- 3 1 serious
 - 2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
 - 3 What, kind, clever/intelligent
- 4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting
- 5 1T 2T 3T 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I'm very sporty.
 - 2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
 - 3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
 - 4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
 - 5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
 - 6 Yes, I think I am.

- 1 1 They had a baby last year.
 - 2 They split up in January.
 - 3 We have a very good relationship.
 - 4 How did you get to know her?
 - 5 They were together for three years.
 - 6 I went out with him for six months.
- 2 1 have
- 2 together
- 6 divorced, partner/
- 3 couple
- girlfriend, get
- 4 out, up
- 3 1D 2D 3S 4S 5D 6S
- 4 Answers from an Hungarian person
 - 1 My wife.
 - 2 Seven years.
 - 3 At a friend's Christmas party.
 - 4 We have mutual friends.
 - 5 We live together.
 - 6 Because we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

Unit 16

- 1 1 I'm tired.
- 5 I'm boiling.
- 2 I'm nervous.
- I'm ill. or I feel ill.
- 3 I'm thirsty.
- or I don't feel well.
- 4 I'm hungry.
- 2 1 matter; feel or 'm 4 boiling
 - 2 tired
- 5 nervous
- 3 matter; freezing
- 6 What's; well
- 4 1 angry
- 6 frightened
- 2 worried
- 7 unhappy
- 3 upset
- 8 embarrassed
- 4 scared
- 9 excited

9 love

- 5 surprised
- 5 1 angry 6 happy
 - 2 surprised
- 7 upset or sad or unhappy
- 3 worried
- 8 frightened or scared
- 4 excited
- 5 embarrassed

Unit 17

- 1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
 - 2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
 - 3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.
 - 4 I finish work at 6 p.m.

 - 5 I have dinner with my family.
 - 6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
 - 7 I sleep seven hours a night.
- 2 1 get
- 4 get
- 2 have
- 5 have
- 3 leave
- 6 go
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
 - 2 Yes, I do sometimes.
 - 3 In the sitting room.
 - 4 At about 8.15.
 - 5 At about 8.50.
 - 6 My family.
 - 7 At around 11.30.
 - 8 About 8 hours.
- 5 do the shopping once or twice a week stay in go shopping play tennis go to the gym

at the weekend

- come round go for a walk
- 6 1 go 6 late 2 round 7 at
 - 3 play 8 gym
 - 4 out or shopping 9 do, early 5 During, in 10 see
- 7 1D 2S 3D 4D 5S 6D
- 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
 - 2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
 - 3 Haruko always stays in.
 - 4 Hiro studies all day.
 - 5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
 - 6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.
- 9 Answers from a British person
 - 1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
 - 2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
 - 3 False. I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
 - 4 False. I never study on Sunday.
 - 5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
 - 6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
 - 7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
 - 8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.

1	1	jacket	6	T-shirt
Č		trousers		dress
	3	jumper	8	jeans
		coat	9	sweater

5 raincoat

3 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 F 11 T 12 F

5 1 gloves 4 sandals 2 umbrella 5 hat 3 jeans 6 jeans

6 1 Give me the sock.

2 Not possible.

3 I've got one pair of sandals.

4 Not possible.

5 She's wearing my scarf.

6 Where is my glove?

7 Not possible.

8 Not possible.

7 Answers from a German person

 Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.

2 I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.

3 No, I only wear leather shoes.

4 I wear sunglasses in summer.

5 I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

Unit 19

1	1	short	5	loose
	2	comfortable	6	expensive
	3	small	7	smart
	4	casual	8	long
2	1	uncomfortable	5	small
	2	nice	6	long
	3	casual	7	loose
	4	expensive	8	lovely

3 1 short 5 loose

2 uncomfortable 6 horrible/awful/ 3 casual terrible

4 expensive

5 1 a or a size 4 fit, too 2 medium 5 take 3 wrong 6 fit, too

6 1 The shirt is too small/tight.

2 The trousers are too long.

3 The hat's too big.

7 1 Where do I pay?

2 No thanks, I'll leave it.

3 Excuse me, where's the changing room?

4 Can I try this dress on?

5 I'm looking for a pair of trousers.

6 Do you need any help?

8 1 on 5 room 2 desk 6 help 3 them 7 lovely/nice 4 card 8 pay

9 Answers from a Turkish person

1 No, I don't.

2 I buy clothes about four times a year.

3 I bought some very nice walking shoes.

4 Yes, I always do.

5 Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.

6 I usually pay by debit card.

Unit 20

The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.

2 Could you put in your PIN, please? or Could you enter your PIN, please?

3 She paid for the dress in cash.

4 I've only got a 50 pound note.

5 They're €6 for each.

6 Have you got a bank account?

7 Three books. That's €42 altogether.

8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 change.

2 1 put in/enter 5 each
2 PIN 6 altogether
3 receipt 7 note
4 cost 8 change

3 1 price 5 fare 2 spend 6 earn 3 saved 7 sold 4 won 8 bill

4 1 bought 4 earned 2 spent 5 won 3 sold 6 saved

5 1 online 4 price 2 bill 5 fares 3 free 6 earn

6 Answers from a Greek person

1 Very rarely.

2 Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.

3 Yes, most of the time it is.

4 It's about one euro. 5 Yes, they're cheap.

6 No, women earn less than men.

Unit 21

11c 2i 3h 4j 5b 6a 7e 8f 9g

2 1 rain 4 foggy 2 sunny 5 wind 3 snows 6 cloudy

- 4 1 showers 4 minutes 2 lightning 5 damp 3 dry, very hot 6 breeze
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
 - 2 It was humid yesterday.
 - 3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
 - 4 The weather's changeable.
 - 5 It's dry today.
 - 6 We had a storm.
- 6 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - 1 We have a lot of showers in the winter.
 - 2 In winter it's not always freezing at night.
 - 3 The weather is the same all summer. True. It is not and humid.
 - 4 Once or twice a year we have heavy rain for 24 hours.
 - 5 It only snows in the west of the country.
 - 6 Our winters are usually cold and wet.
 - 7 We often have thunder and lightning.
 True.
 - 8 It is usually hot and humid in summer.

- 1 1 hurts 7 flu 2 've got 8 Has 3 feel 9 've got 4 've got 10 Has 5 feel 11 's 6 hurts 12 haven't got
- 2 1 cough 5 stomach-ache
 - 2 temperature 6 sick 3 hurt 7 flu 4 matter; well 8 throat
- 4 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
 - 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
 - 3 Go and see your GP doctor. OR Go and see your GP doctor.
 - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
 - 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
 - 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
 - 7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
 - 8 Lie down for the a while.
- 5 Possible answers
 - 1 You should go and lie down for a while.
 - 2 You should go to the pharmacy.
 - 3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
 - 4 You should go and lie down for a while.
 - 5 You should go and see your GP.

Unit 23

- 1 1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream 2 tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine 3 correct 6 pharmacist
 - 5 correct 6 pharmacis
- 2 1 a sore throat
 - 2 take these tablets
 - 3 for toothache, please
 - 4 wool
 - 5 some plasters, please
 - 6 for your finger
 - 7 this medicine it's very good
 - 8 tablet three times a day
 - 9 cream
 - 10 help you

Unit 24

- 1 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
 - 2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
 - 3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
 - 4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
 - 5 Cow, because it's only an animal.
- 2 1 beef 3 tuna 5 crab 2 pork 4 duck
- 3 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon
 - 2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken
- 4 Your own answers

Unit 25

- 1 grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry, cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
- 2 1 sweet 5 small 2 bitter 6 good
 - 3 red 7 sweet 4 green 8 big
- 4 1 carrot 5 beans
 - 2 onion 6 courgette
 - 3 pepper 7 tomato
 - 4 cabbage 8 garlic
- 5 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F
- 6 Your own answers

Unit 26

6 /

111/ 7 2 / bread or some 3 butter or some bread butter 9 4 / 10 rice or some rice 5 cheese or some 11 jam or some cheese jam

12

- 2 1 milk butter 2 some cheese 8 rice a large bar of 3 sugar 9 4 biscuits chocolate 5 some olive oil 10 noodles 6 six eggs 4 1T 2F 3F 4T 5F 6T 7F 8T 9 F 10 T 6 packet
- 5 1 box 6 packet
 2 jar 7 grams
 3 bottle 8 packet
 4 carton/bottle 9 litre/bottle/c
 - 4 carton/bottle 9 litre/bottle/carton
 - 5 kilo 10 bottle/litre
- 7 1 got, many 3 Could/Can, just 2 much, else, that's 4 like, ripe
- 8 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
 - 2 I'd like some sugar, please.
 3 Have you got any ham?
 - 4 How much cheese would you like?
 - 5 That's just over half a kilo.
 - 6 How many oranges would you like?

- 1 1 roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
 - 2 cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee
- 2 1 bread 6 couple 2 sandwich 7 white 3 chocolate 8 white 4 coffee 9 have
 - 5 take away
- 3 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
 - 2 To drink here or take away?
 - 3 To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich.
 - 4 OK. It will be a couple of minutes.
 - 5 Have a seat, please.

Unit 28

- 1 1 fork 9 wine 2 spoon 10 red 3 napkin 11 white 4 plate 12 salt 5 bowl 13 black pepper 6 bottle 14 bottles 7 mineral water 15 oil 8 glasses 16 vinegar
- 2 Answers from an Argentinian person On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar. We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine.
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F 10 T

- 5 1 cream 5 course 2 steak 6 sauce 3 salad 7 done 4 soup 8 boiled
- 6 Your own answers
- 8 1 some more 5 of course 2 to order 6 the 3 another 7 111 4 meal 8 certainly 9 1 have 6 dessert 2 how 7 11 3 course 8 bill
 - 4 sparkling 9 sure/certainly 5 some
- Unit 29
 - 1 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?
 - 2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
 - 3 How long does it take to the railway station?
 - 4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
 - 5 Where do I get off for the cinema?
 - 6 Does the 24 go to the park?
 - 7 How often does the 24 run? 8 Which is the last stop for the 16?
 - 2 1 Five 5 At the next stop 2 The 16 or the 24 6 No, it doesn't
 - 3 About ten 7 Every ten minutes 4 Yes, it does 8 The railway station
 - 3 1 stop 6 timetable 2 next/second 7 run 3 last/final 8 runs 4 get off 9 every 5 goes/runs 10 takes
 - 4 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Yes, at the end of the road.
 - 2 The 9 and the 15.
 - 3 They run about every 15 minutes.
 - 4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.
 - 5 Four.
 - 6 Five to ten minutes.

- 1 1 a slow train 4 the 7 o'clock train 2 get off the train 5 a seat
 - 3 catch a train 6 at a (railway) station
- 2 1 fare 5 last/next 2 carriage 6 waited/wait
 - 3 missed 7 timetable 4 get/take 8 journey

- 3 1 advance 5 office 2 return 6 train 3 direct 7 seat
 - 4 London
- 4 1 change 5 to 2 leaves 6 single 3 platform 7 advance
 - 4 gets
- 5 Answers from a German person
 - A month ago.
 - 2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
 - 3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
 - 4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced prices.
 - 5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to Berlin.

- 1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
 - 2 Go along here and turn left.
 - 3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
 - 4 It's the third turning on the right.
 - 5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
 - 6 Turn left into Foster Road.
- 2 1 turning 5 going 2 much 6 on 3 left/right/corner 7 here 4 me 8 way
- 3 1
 - 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
 - 1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning 6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks
 - 1 way 2 Turn 3 into 4 corner 5 right

Unit 32

- 1 1 station 5 crossing 2 road 6 park 3 camera 7 jam 4 sign
- 2 1 station 6 speed 2 main 7 roundabout 3 sign 8 traffic 4 park 9 pavement 5 crossing 10 junction
- 4 1 motorway 4 speed limit 2 rush hour 5 accident 3 overtake 6 a quiet road
- 5 1 busy 3 far
 - 2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive

- 6 Answers from a Turkish person
 - 1 Three.
 - 2 120 kph.
 - 3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
 - 4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
 - 5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

Unit 33

- 1 1f 2h 3j 4c 5b 6e 7i 8g 9a
- 2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
 - 2 in/out
 - 3 do not disturb/ring bell
 - 4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
 - 5 in/out
 - 6 do not disturb/ring bell
 - 7 declare

Unit 34

- 1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia 2 Brasilia 7 Rio de Janeiro 3 Amazon 8 Mountain 4 Pico da Neblina 9 inland 5 Argentina 10 coast
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
 - 2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
 - 3 It's the capital.
 - 4 It's a town in the south.
 - 5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
 - 6 It's a famous city on the coast.
- 3 Answers from a Greek person
 - 1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
 - 2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
 - 3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.
 - 6 The islands.
 - 7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

- 1 1 bridge 5 park 2 square 6 mosque 3 castle 7 building
 - 4 cathedral
- 2 1 temple 5 park
 - 2 bridge 6 statue, square 3 market 7 castle, palace
 - 4 museum 8 place

- 4 Size: a small village, a large city, a mediumsized town
 - Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital
 - Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
 - Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town
- 5 1 of 5 population 2 in 6 under 3 of 7 industrial 4 on 8 historic
- 6 Answer from a British person
 Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west
 of London, in the south-west of England.
 It's on the River Avon. The population is just
 under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place
 in England, with lots of historic buildings,
 including a famous abbey (like a cathedral)
 and many museums.
- 7 1 no 4 no 7 no 2 yes 5 yes 3 yes 6 yes
- 8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife 2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy 3 do 6 polluted
- 9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
 - 1 It's pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
 - 2 It's a big city, and there's a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums – whatever you're interested in.
 - 3 It's a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
 - 4 There are many popular clubs, bars, allnight cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
 - 5 Yes, it is.
 - 6 Some people think it's noisy and dirty, but I love it because it's got everything.

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F 8F 9T
- 2 1 valley, hill 5 own, dog, horse 2 grass 6 crops, grow 7 farmers
 - 4 fields

- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - Neither, I live in the city centre.
 - 2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
 - 3 No, I can't.
 - 4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
 - 5 There is a football pitch.
 - 6 No.
 - 7 Wheat, soy and corn.
 - 8 Yes, I know a few.

5 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

- 6 1 I often buy flowers.
 - 2 I love the countryside.
 - 3 I'm very healthy.
 - 4 I see lots of birds in my area.
 - 5 Our public transport is wonderful.
 - 6 I'm often alone in the evening.
 - 7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
 - 8 I never feel lonely.
- 7 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 False. I don't buy flowers.
 - 2 True.
 - 3 True.
 - 4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
 - 5 True.
 - 6 False. My family is normally with me.
 - 7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
 - 8 True.

Unit 37

- 1 1 butcher's 4 deli
 2 baker's 5 chemist's
 3 paper shop 6 newsagent's
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
 - 2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
 - 3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
 - 4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
 - 5 bread, cakes
 - 6 CDs, DVDs

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7T 8F

- 5 1 shopping 4 convenient 2 prefer 5 deliver 3 queue 6 get
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
 - 2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
 - 3 Yes, often.
 - 4 Yes, they are.
 - 5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
 - 6 At the market.

1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5F 6T 7T 8T 9T

- 2 1 basement 6 garden 2 block of flats 7 steps
 - 3 ground floor 8 neighbour 4 front door 9 balcony 5 stairs 10 town centre
- 4 study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom
- 5 1 living 8 kitchen 2 bathroom 9 study 3 view 10 Upstairs bedrooms 4 garage 11 5 garden 12 bathrooms 6 outside 13 parking 7 views 14 outside
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 I live in a flat.
 - 2 On the first floor.
 - 3 No.
 - 4 I look into the courtyard.
 - 5 No, but there are always free spaces.
 - 6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room, a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen and a big hallway.

Unit 39

1		washing machine	7	frying pan
	2	dishwasher, sink	8	freezer
	3	saucers, cupboard	9	full
	4	shelf/shelves	10	microwave, hob
	5	bin		tap

12 saucepan

- Answers from a Turkish person
 My washing machine is in the bathroom.
- 4 1 shopping 6 puts
 2 put (everything) away 7 takes
 3 empty 8 cook
 4 clean 9 washing-up
 5 make 10 ironing
- 5 Answers from a Greek person
 - 1 My partner.
 - 2 I do.

6 oven

- 3 I do.
- 4 I do.
- 5 My partner.
- 6 We both do.

Unit 40

1 1 mirror

		desk	5	war	drobe
	3	blanket	6	tow	el
2	1	bedside table		7	wardrob
	2	mirror		8	bidet

4 bidet

- 2 1 bedside table 7 wardrobe 2 mirror 8 bidet 3 bath 9 blanket 4 chest of drawers 10 sheet 5 washbasin 11 towel 6 toilet 12 shower
- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe. In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.

-	4	do, brush		-1
3	- 1	do. prusn	4	shave

2 have 5 washes, shampoo

3 puts on 6 tissues

61a2a3-4a5-6an7-8a,-

7 Your own answers

Unit 41

1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7T 8T 9T 10T 11T 12F 13T 14F

2	1	floor	7	bookshelves
-				
		carpet	8	light
	3	cushion	9	curtains
	4	radiator	10	armchair
	5	coffee table	11	rug
	6	ceiling	12	fireplace

- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
 - 2 No, we've got air conditioning.
 - 3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
 - 4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
 - 5 On the ceiling.
 - 6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

- 1 1 history
 5 physics

 2 geography
 6 maths

 3 biology
 7 music

 4 design
 8 literature
- 2 1 PE/physical education
 - 2 ICT/information communication technology
 - 3 literature
 - 4 modern languages
 - 5 RE/religious education
 - 6 chemistry
 - 7 art

3 Your own answers

51c2h3g4i5a6e7b8d 9f10j

6 1 start 4 leave, get 2 uniform 5 state, private

3 pupils, secondary

7 Answers from a German person

1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.

We don't have school uniforms in Germany.

3 At the age of ten.

4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.

5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

8 1 no 3 2 5 E 2 5 4 A 6 C

9 1 take 4 results 2 do 5 badly, failed

3 well, grade 6 worst

10 Answers from a Turkish person

1 They were 50 minutes.

2 Yes.

3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.

4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.

5 Yes.

Unit 43

1 1 do 5 A graduate 2 term 6 Unfortunately 3 BSc 7 after

4 library

2 1 degree 4 fortunately 2 do/write 5 again 3 do, PhD 6 last

3 Answers from a Greek person

1 Four years.

2 Two or three years.

3 About ten weeks.

4 About twelve weeks.

5 Yes, always.

4 1 doctor 5 economist 2 engineer 6 politician 3 architect 7 journalist

4 psychologist 8 businessman/manager

5 1 lawyer P 7 politics DS
2 architecture DS 8 engineer P
3 computer science DS 9 medicine DS
4 software engineer P 10 economics DS
5 psychology DS 11 IT manager P
6 business studies DS 12 reporter P

Unit 44

1 1 vet businesswoman 2 shop assistant 7 secretary 3 nurse 8 dentist 9 chef 4 old 5 hasn't 10 builder 2 1 businessman 7 builder 2 shop assistant 8 lorry driver 3 hairdresser 9 cleaner housewife 4 secretary 10 5 police officer 11 self-employed

6 retired 12 soldier
3 1 a hairdresser 5 retired

2 a pilot 6 self-employed 3 unemployed 7 a teacher 4 the boss/a manager 8 a chef

4 Answers from a Japanese person

1 I'm a secretary.

2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.

3 I don't know anyone who's a hairdresser.

4 My mother is unemployed.

5 I don't know anyone who's retired.

6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.

7 My friend Dave is a pilot.

8 My father's friend Mr Kitamura is a

9 My father and brother are businessmen.

10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

Unit 45

1 1 hours a day 6 she work 2 a factory 7 an American airline 8 earn much

4 work for 9 job 5 does he earn 10 ten to six

2 1 part 5 hours 2 a 6 day 3 earn 7 year 4 low 8 salary

3 Answers from a British person

1 I'm a reporter.

2 I work for a local newspaper.

3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.

4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.

4 1 does makes 5 organizate organize 2 meet meeting 6 correct

7 about 3 type typing 4 correct 8 40

5 1 meet 6 colleagues 7 2 answer discuss

8 organize 3 send/write 9 clients 4 spend 5 making 10 have

Unit 46

1 1 screen 5 monitor 2 mouse 6 keyboard

3 personal computer 7 disk 4 memory stick 8 webcam

2 1 speaker 5 memory stick, disk

2 hard copies 6 mouse 3 hard drive 7 mouse mat 4 laptop 8 screen

3 Answers from a German person

1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.

2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.

3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it in the guest room.

4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and my holidays on the computer.

5 No, don't have a webcam.

5 1 q 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c

6 1 clicked 5 cut 2 beginning, end 6 save 3 make/save 7 open 4 did 8 middle

Unit 47

1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F

2 1 I must reply to Jean's message.

2 Did you get/receive my message? 3 I received an email from Li today.

4 Have you checked your emails/messages?

5 Please forward the attachment to John.

6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.

3 Answers from a Turkish person

1 Almost every day.

2 My colleagues, family and friends.

3 Commercial, healthy life emails.

4 Yes they do. They send me pictures, poems and jokes.

5 Yes.

4 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6S 7S 8S

9 D 10 S 5 1 search

4 broadband

2 download 3 on/using

5 website 6 visit

6 Answers from a Greek person

1 annaingreece@yahoo.com

2 Very rarely.

3 It's www.in.gr

4 Google.

5 No.

6 I use the internet almost every day.

7 No, never.

8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.

9 I use Google.

Unit 48

11A 2B 3A 4B 5A 6A

2 1 I hate chocolate.

2 They don't like doing homework very much.

3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.

4 I quite like shopping.

5 She doesn't like driving.

6 I think tennis is OK.

7 I really like going out with friends.

8 She loves watching sport.

3 Answers from a German person

1 I love watching TV.

2 I really like studying English.

3 I love driving.

4 I don't like shopping for clothes.

5 I like cleaning the house.

6 I quite like writing emails.

7 I like talking on the phone.

8 I love going to the cinema.

4 1 Lenjoy watching TV.

2 I'm not interested in politics.

3 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.

4 She prefers reading to writing.

5 He's a fantastic boss.

6 Was the party good fun?

7 It's a boring programme.

8 Are you keen on tennis?

5 1 fun 5 keen 2 prefer

6 enjoy 3 favourite 7 interesting

4 interested

6 Answers from a Turkish person

1 Yes it is.

2 I like both.

3 Istanbul.

4 Yes. I like swimming.

5 Yes.

6 Yes.

7 Yes.

- 1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
- 2 1 T
 - 2 T
 - 3 F You score goals in ice hockey. or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
 - 4 F You play football on a pitch. or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
 - 5 F You play ice hockey with sticks. or You play tennis with rackets.
 - 6 T
 - 7 T
 - 8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball. or You play ice hockey with a puck.
- 3 1 game 2 basketball
- 4 score/result, nil 5 pitch, court
- 3 games, set
- 4 1 match/game 2 against
- 5 beat 6 won
- 3 top 4 to

5 time

- 7 drew 8 beat
- 5 1 match/game 2 against
- 6 beat 7 scored
- 3 lost 4 drew; with
- 8 won 9 leading 10 score
- 6 Your own answers

Unit 50

- 1 1 another place another place 2 inside 6 inside 3 inside 7 another place 4 inside 8 inside 2 1 go 6 spend 2 collects 7 go 3 play 8 does 4 does 9 makes 5 play
- 3 Your own answers
- 5 1 True.
 - 2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
 - 3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
 - 4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
 - 5 True.
 - 6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
 - 7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
 - 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I love exercising and cooking.
 - 2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
 - 3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
 - 4 I never listen to classical music.
 - 5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
 - 6 No. I'm a bad singer.

Unit 51

- 1 1 2004 4 album 2 able 5 Alex Turner 3 two 6 drums
- 2 1 group 5 album
 2 lead 6 chart
 3 drummer 7 known
 4 single 8 download
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 The Beatles.
 - 2 Paul McCartney: lead singer and bass guitar, John Lennon: lead singer and guitar, George Harrison: guitar, Ringo Starr: drums.
 - 3 In 1962.
 - 4 Hey Jude.
 - 5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.
 - 6 Eleanor Rigby.
- 4 1 conductor 5 cello 2 orchestra 6 composer
 - 3 classical 7 perform 4 concert 8 pianist
- 5 1 orchestra 6 opera singer 2 conductor 7 composer
 - 3 pianist 8 by
 - 4 violinist 9 concert, performing/
 - 5 cellist singing

- 1 1 thriller 4 cartoon 2 comedy 5 love story 3 action film 6 horror film
- 21c 2f 3a 4b 5e
- 3 1 romantic 3 frightening/scary 2 violent 4 funny
- - 5 stars

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
 - I like comedies a lot.
 - 2 'The Holiday'.
 - 3 At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
 - 4 Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.
 - 5 Nancy Meyers.
 - 6 It's a love story.

1 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6S 7D

- 2 1 magazines 5 wars
 - 6 opinion(s) 2 report
 - 3 events/news 7 celebrities
 - 4 disasters
- 4 1 in
 - 6
 - 2 the 7 of, on
 - 3 on 8 believe
 - 4 out 9 of
 - 5 programme
- 5 1 watch, saw/watched
 - 2 believe/think, none
 - 3 news, happened
 - 4 listen, heard/listened to
 - 5 paper/newspaper
 - 6 forecast
 - 7 watch, much
- 6 Your own answers

Unit 54

- 1 1 abroad 5 hire 6 find 2 arrange 7 packed 3 might
 - 8 book 4 get
- 2 1 abroad 6 currency 7 insurance
 - 2 flight(s) 3 accommodation 8 might

 - 9 4 booked/arranged/decided pack 10 find 5 get

Unit 55

- 4 tourists 1 1 staff 2 recommended 5 facilities 3 delicious 6 minibar
- 2 1 stay 5 satellite
 - 2 staff 6 conditioning, heating
 - 3 facilities 7 quests
 - 4 minibar 8 recommend

- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
 - 1 One night.
 - 2 Yes, very helpful.
 - 3 No. It was not as good as I expected.
 - 4 Yes, it did.
 - 5 No. it didn't.
 - 6 It had air conditioning but not central heating.
 - 7 Yes. I talked to a lady in the public bath.
 - 8 Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.
- 4 1 no 5 €60
 - 2 yes 6 no
 - 7 3 yes no
 - 4 no 8 yes
- 5 1 like 9 included
 - 2 book 10 air
 - 3 double 11 afraid
 - 4 twin 12 shame
 - 5 en suite 13 mind
 - 14 Right/OK/Fine/ 6 shower
 - Great/Good 7 fine/great
 - 15 details 8 a

- 7 boarding card 1 1 suitcase 8 window seat 2 luggage
 - 9 ticket 3 aisle seat
 - 4 hand luggage 10 scales 5 good flight 11 trolley
 - 6 airport
- 3 1 no no 5 2 2 no
 - 3 yes
- 4 check-in 4 1 call, gate 2 boarding 5 depart/leave

 - 3 delayed
- 5 2 (c) fasten your seat belt
 - 3 (h) the plane takes off
 - 4 (d) the plane lands
 - 5 (e) get off the plane
 - 6 (i) someone checks your passport
 - (a) collect your luggage 7
 - 8 (b) go through customs
 - 9 (f) leave the terminal
- 6 1 lands
 - 2 your seat belt
 - 3 customs, passport control
 - 4 luggage, baggage reclaim
 - 5 get on, get off
- 7 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Two or three times a year.
 - 2 I usually read a book or magazine.
 - 3 An aisle seat.
 - 4 A small bag and my laptop.

1	1	rent	5	sea	
	2	swimming costume	6	perfect	
		shorts	7	relax	
	4	apartment	8	sunbathe	
2	1	beach	4	so/two	
	2	got/took, went	5	flew	
	3	rented, resort	6	lie	

Unit 58

1	1	go	4	take
	2	book	5	guided
	3	visit		go on
2	1	took, typical	4	art
	2	should, round	5	went, quid

3 got, map 3 Your own answers

Unit 59

1	1	а	20	3 d	4 b	50
	•	•	-	-	7 6	3 6

2	1	Sign	4	rate
	2	Change	5	per
	3	currency		cash

3 Answers from a British person

- The pound sterling.
- 2 £1 = \$1.84 at the moment.
- 3 At a bank or a bureau de change.
- 4 Yes, often.
- 5 They are usually inside or outside banks. at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.
- 4 1 deliver letters
 - 2 the name, address and postcode
 - 3 to the post office
 - 4 on the scales
 - 5 a stamp
 - 6 the postman
 - 7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard
- 5 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?
 - 2 Can you put it on the scales?
 - 3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?
 - 4 Where can/do I post this letter?
 - 5 How much is a postcard to Russia?
 - 6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

Unit 60

- 1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
 - 2 Max, this is Hanna, or Hanna, this is Max.
 - 3 Bye. I hope to see you again. or I hope to see you again. Bye.
 - 4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. or Nice to meet you. Goodbye.

2 1 nice, hi/hello

- 2 hope, again, goodbye/bye
- 3 is, Hello/Hi, to meet/see you, Hello/Hi
- 4 goodbye/bye, to meet/see you, Bye/ Goodbye
- 3 1 See you again. 6 How are things?
 - 2 I must go now. 7 See you on Sunday.
 - 3 See you later. 8 I've got to go now.
 - 4 He's very well. 9 That's fine.
 - 5 See you soon.
- 4 1 well, bad, how's, fine/very well/not bad
 - 2 've got to, later, that's, then
- 5 1 Good morning, Morning
 - 2 Good evening, Evening
 - 3 Good afternoon, Afternoon
 - 4 Goodbye/Goodnight, Bye/Bye bye/Night

Unit 61

- 1 1i 2h 3g 4d 5j 6c 7f 8e 9a
- 2 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend. holiday, journey, time
 - 2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday
 - 3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done! Welcome home!

Unit 62

- 1 1 How often do you go there?
 - 2 What kind of music do you like?
 - 3 What does he do?
 - 4 How long have you lived there?
 - 5 What's wrong with Peter?
 - 6 Who does this belong to?
 - 7 What's his flat like?
 - 8 Why don't you like her?

2 a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2

- 3 1 often 4 How/What
 - 2 Whose 5 long
 - 3 What 6 Who
- 4 1 What 4 many 2 long
 - 5 nearest 3 time 6 seeing
- 5 1 far 5 close/shut
 - 2 many 6 worth
 - 3 Which 7 nearest 4 What 8 recommend
- 6 Answers from a Turkish person
- 1 In Adana, Turkey.
 - 2 Half of my life.
 - 3 Capadoccia and the coast.
 - 4 Three hours in a car.
 - 5 Asma Alti (a kebab house in Adana).

- 1 1 Can you lend me a pen? ~ Yes, of course.
 - 2 Could you bring the books here, please? ~ Yes, no problem.
 - 3 Could you possibly wait here a few minutes? ~ I'm afraid I can't.
 - 4 Lia, can you change places with Maris, please? ~ Yes, sure.

2 Possible answers

- 1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
 - B Yes, sure.
- 2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
 - B Yes, no problem.
- 3 A Could you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
 - B I'm afraid I can't.
- 4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
 - B Yes, sure.
- 5 A Could you possibly wait in the classroom a few minutes?
 - B Yes, no problem.

3 Possible answers

- 1 Is it all right if I use this dictionary?
- 2 Do you mind/Is it all rightif I make a coffee?
- 3 Could I stay for another ten minutes? or Is it OK/all right/if I stay another ten minutes? or Do you mind if I stay another ten minutes?
- 4 Is it OK if I close the window?
- 5 Can I borrow your book?
- 6 Yes, sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.
- 7 I'm afraid I need it.
- 8 Is it all right to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, of course/no problem/go ahead/ that's fine.
- 4 Possible answers
 - 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today?
 - 2 Could I borrow a rubber?
 - 3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
 - 4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
- 5 OK; Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go ahead; Yes, that's fine.

Unit 64

- 1 1 Would you like to come round later?
 - 2 Yes, I'd love to.
 - 3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
 - 4 That sounds lovely.
 - 5 I'm afraid I can't.
 - 6 That would be nice.
 - 7 Do you want to come to a party?
 - 8 I'm sorry, but I'm busy tonight.

- 2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
 - B Yes, great!
 - 2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
 - B I'm afraid I can't.
 - 3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
 - B Yes, that sounds lovely.
 - 4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
 - B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

Unit 65

- 1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
 - 2 The weather's nice, so ...
 - 3 ... what about going to the beach?
 - 4 Yes, good idea.
 - 5 Maybe we could take the train.
 - 6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
 - 7 I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- 2 1 What shall we do this evening?
 - 2 Do you have a suggestion?
 - 3 What about going to see a film?
 - 4 I'd prefer to go by train.
 - 5 Yes, that's a good idea.
- 3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
 - B I'm not sure about that.
 - 2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
 - B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
 - A OK, let's do that.
 - 3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
 - B Let's go to an exhibition.
 - A Yeah, that's a good idea.

- 1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine 2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks
- 2 1 Can I give you a hand?
 - 2 Thank you very much.
 - 3 Would you like a drink?
 - 4 Thanks a lot.
 - 5 No, I'm fine, thanks.
- 3 1 A Would you like a drink?
 - B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
 - 2 A Do you need some help?
 - B No, I'm fine, thanks.
 - 3 A Would you like something to eat?
 - B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
 - 4 A Can I give you a hand?
 - B No, don't worry.
- 4 1d 2e 3f 4a 5g 6b
- 5 1 of 5 Shall I 2 Let 6 give
 - 2 Let 6 give 3 Shall 7 me
 - 4 Would 8 want

- 6 1 you, lift, thanks, kind, you
 - 2 shall, make, please, me
 - 3 me, carry, thanks
 - 4 want

- 1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
 - B Don't worry/never mind.
 - 2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
 - B Don't worry.
 - 3 A I've broken your cup I'm very sorry.
 - B It doesn't matter.
- 2 1 That's 5 I'm
 - 2 worry 6 Sorry, problem
 - 3 very/really, matter 7 apologize
 - 4 mind 8 rude

Unit 68

- 1 1 What do you think of it?
 - 2 I agree with you.
 - 3 I don't think it's very good.
 - 4 It was a waste of money.
 - 5 Personally, I didn't like it.
 - 6 I prefer the other one
- 2 1 think, Personally 3 of, think
 - 2 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
 - 2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
 - 3 Personally, I like it.
 - 4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
 - 5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

Unit 69

- 1 1D 25 3D 45 55 65
- 2 1 engaged, phone
 - 2 number, code
 - 3 call, out, message, rang, battery
 - 4 wrong
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
 - 2 My family.
 - 3 Only a few minutes.
 - 4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.
- 4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
 - 2 Just a moment.
 - 3 Speaking.
 - 4 Oh, hello, how are you?

5 1 speaking 7 speak to
2 This is/lt's 8 just a
3 in/there, please 9 get
4 the moment 10 is that
5 ring/call/phone 11 speaking

12 It

Unit 70

back/again

- 1 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6F 7T 8F
- 2 1 useful 6 noisy 2 weak 7 narrow 3 dead 8 unusual 4 rich 9 asleep 5 quiet 10 wide
- 4 1 SYN 4 OPP 2 SYN 5 SYN
 - 3 OPP
- 5 1 confusing 6 necessary 2 helpful 7 strange/odd
 - 3 impossible 8 clear
 - 4 mad/crazy 9 annoying/irritating
 - 5 only

- 1 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
 - 2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
 - 3 There are only three students in the class.
 - 4 He even works on Sunday.
 - 5 She's still at university.
 - 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is even bigger.
- 2 1 only 4 only 2 still 5 even
 - 3 particularly 6 still
- 3 1 Only 4 only 2 still 5 even
 - 3 especially/ 6 especially/ particularly particularly
- 4 1 very
 - 2 absolutely
 - 3 a bit/a little
 - 4 really
 - 5 really/extremely
 - 6 quite
 - 7 very/really
 - 8 really
- 5 Possible answers
 - 1 He was extremely good.
 - 2 The holiday was really wonderful.
 - 3 She's a bit unfriendly.
 - 4 The kitchen was really clean.
 - 5 The room was a little small.
 - 6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
 - 7 They're very nice people.
 - 8 The weather was really terrible.

- 1 1 put, cost, read 2 write, drive, win
- 4 know, hold, grow 5 buy, bring, think
- 3 spend, send, lend
- 2 left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat
- 3 1 was, slept 2 swam
- 5 saw
- 3 rang
- 6 bought 7 stood
- 4 wrote, forgot
- 8 took, went
- 5 brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up
- 6 1 forgotten
- 6 known
- 2 given
- 7 spoken
- 3 seen 4 taken
- 8 driven 9 grown
- 5 written
- They all end in -n or -en.
- 7 1 read
- 5 sent
- 2 driven
- 6 slept
- 3 taught 4 won
- 7 swum 8 spoken
- 8 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - 1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
 - No. never.
 - 3 Yes, many times.
 - 4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
 - 5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
 - 6 Yes, on a cruise.
 - 7 Yes, many times.
 - 8 Yes, on several occasions.

Unit 73

- 1 1 out 2 up
- out
- 3 over
- 5 up 6 on
- 2 1 out
- 5 down
- 2 up
- 6 up
- 3 on
- 7 off
- 4 down
- 8 over

7 Turn them on.

- 4 1 Take it off.
- 5 Take them off.
- 2 Try them on.
- 6 Try it on.
- 3 Turn it on. 4 Put them on.
- 8 Put it on.
- 5 1 Could I try it on?
 - 2 correct
 - 3 You can take it off if you're hot.
 - 4 Look it up in the dictionary.
 - 5 correct
 - 6 correct
 - 7 Did you put it on?
 - 8 correct

- 6 Answers from a Hungarian person
 - 1 I grew up in Budapest.
 - 2 I always feel hungry.
 - 3 Once or twice a week.
 - 4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
 - 5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

Unit 74

- 1 1 2005 6 midnight 2 Friday 7 the autumn
 - 3 April 8 winter
 - 4 the morning 9 dinner time 5 4.00 10 the evening
- 2 1 at 6 in 2 at 7 in
 - 3 in 8 at
 - 4 in 9 At
 - 5 On 10 on
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I get up at 7.30.
 - 2 I study English at night.
 - 3 I go swimming at the weekend.
 - 4 I watch TV in the evening.
 - 5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.
 - 6 I see my family in the mornings.
 - 7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
 - 8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
 - 9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
 - 10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

Unit 75

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F
- 9T 10T
- 2 1 ago 4 time
 - 2 diary 5 appointment
 - 3 night 6 next
- 3 1 I went to the cinema
 - 2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's Bar 3 I stayed at Gary's/I went to Gary's
 - 4 I've got a doctor's appointment
 - 5 It's Pete's birthday
 - 6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad
- 4 1 before 5 since 2 after 6 later 7 for
 - 4 at

3 until

5	1	until	5	at
	2	for	6	since
	3	soon	7	before
	4	in	8	later

6 Your own answers

Unit 76

1	1	in	8	on
	2	on	9	on
	3	at	10	in
	4	in	11	on
	5	in	12	at
	6	on	13	on
	7	in	14	at
2	1	in	4	on
	2	in	5	in
	3	on		at, at, in

3 Answers from a Brazilian person

► Brazil.

1 In a city.

2 In a flat.

3 Yes, Rio Guaiba.

4 It's on the second floor.

5 Yes, I do.

6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

4 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9T

5 1 next to 5 between 2 in front of 6 opposite 7 next to 4 next to

6 Answers from a German person

1 An old factory.

2 More houses.

3 A pub, and more houses.

4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.

5 The neighbours' flat.

6 Another neighbour's flat.

8 1 trees 6 bus stop 2 motorway 7 mountain 3 river 8 stairs 4 shop 9 building 5 gate 10 field 9 1 under 6 through 2 into 7 out of 3 up 8 down 4 along 9 across 5 past 10 under

Unit 77

1 1 X ... and it's also near the park.

2 X ... and he understands Greek too.

3/

4 x ... and also washed the car.

5/

6 X ... and a park near the house as well.

2 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.

2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.

3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.

4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.

5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.

3 Your own answers

4	1	because of	4	SO
	2	to	5	to
	3	because	6	so
5	1	to	5	so
	2	so	6	to
	3	because of	7	because of
	4	because	8	to

Unit 78

1		sure	4	sure
	2	not sure	5	sure
	3	not sure	6	not sure
		If	4	when
	2	When	5	when
	3	if	6	If
3	1	when	4	when
	2	when	5	while/when
	3	while/when	6	when

4 1 Then

2 Afterwards/After that

3 Finally

4 First/First of all/Firstly

5 then/after that/afterwards

5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.

2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching

job in Liverpool.

3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome

4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner. 6 Answers from a Greek person First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

Unit 79

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.
 - 2 They've got a small dog.
 - 3 I haven't got a mobile phone.
 - 4 He hasn't got any money.
 - 5 Have you got any sisters?
 - 6 Has she got a flat in town?
- 2 1 Has she got any children? or Does she have any children?
 - 2 They've got a lovely garden. or They have a lovely garden.
 - 3 Has she got long hair? or Does she have long hair?
 - 4 My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. or My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
 - 5 Have you got a computer? or Do you have a computer?
 - 6 We haven't got any friends here. or We don't have any friends here.
- 3 1 got
- 4 Have
- 2 Do
- 5 Do
- 3 Have
- 4 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
 - 2 Yes, an Apple.
 - 3 Yes, his name's Barney.
 - 4 Yes, I've got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
 - 5 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

Group 1	Group 2	Group 3	Group 4	Group 5	
rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday	
break	lunch	shower	run	weekend	
	dinner	wash	walk	journey	

- 6 1 walk
- 4 swim
- 2 drink
- 5 rest
- 3 dinner
- 6 journey
- 7 1 eat/drink
- 5 time/day
- 2 rest/break
- 6 weekend7 holiday/time
- 3 break 4 journey
- 8 bath

- 1 1 Did you get my message?
 - 2 I must get some new clothes.
 - 3 We got home late last night.
 - 4 It's getting cold.
 - 5 I got three letters today.
 - 6 Where did you get that bag?
 - 7 He needs to get a job.
 - 8 Do you want to get a/the train?
- 2 1 receive
- 5 receive
- 2 buy
- 6 buy
- 3 arrive
- 7 obtain
- 4 become
- 8 travel
- 3 1 get a/the bus
 - 2 get here/home/back
 - 3 get them
 - 4 getting cold
 - 5 getting late
 - 6 get it
 - 7 get one
 - 8 get a bus/taxi

Review answer key

Basic English

Unit 1

- 1 twelve
- 2 fifteen
- 3 thirteen
- 4 thirty-four
- 5 eleven
- 6 seventy-nine
- 7 a/one hundred and twelve
- 8 twenty-seven
- 9 alone hundred and seventy-five
- 10 two hundred and eighty-six
- 11 forty-one
- 12 nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2

- 1 twenty to two, five to two
- 2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
- 3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
- 4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
- 5 five to nine, ten past nine
- 6 half past six, quarter to seven
- 7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

Unit 3

- 1 1 date, of 4 birthday 2 month, year 5 Year's Day
 - 3 season

4 Czech

- 2 1 March 5 Saturday 2 autumn 6 July
 - 3 Thursday 7 September 4 May 8 November

Unit 4

- 1 1 Italy C 9 Brazil C 2 Hungary C 10 Turkey C 3 Mexico C 11 Greek N 12 French N 4 Swiss N 5 China C 13 Germany C 6 Czech N 14 Russia C 7 Egypt C 15 Argentinian N
- 8 Spanish N 16 Portugal C 2 1 Poland 7 Korean 2 Brazilian 8 Turkish 3 Czech Republic 9 Italian
 - 5 Polish 11 Spain 6 Japanese
 - 12 Australian

10 Chinese

Unit 5

1	board	6	notebook
	rubber	7	CD player
3	noticeboard		chair
4	dictionary	9	table/desk
5	pencil sharpener	10	folder

Unit 6

1	sentence	7	pronoun
2	adverb	8	word
3	preposition	9	adjective
4	phrase	10	singular
5	regular	11	irregular
6	article	12	plural

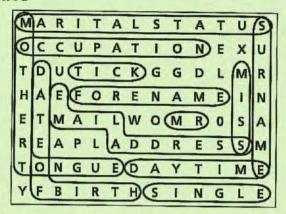
1	S	P	A	5	T	S	1	М	P	L	E
V	5	T	A	R	T	1	C	L	Đ	w	A
D	E	U	P	S	-1	N	G	U	L	A	R
M	N	G	R	E	G	U	L	A	R	D	E
R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	J	P
R	E	1	N	T	R	0	S	E	K	E	0
E	N	L	0	A	D	G	T	P	D	c	S
G	C	L	U	K	E	R	U	L	E	T	1
U	E	D	W	U	W	E	M	U	1	1	T
L	Y	A	D	V	E	R	B	R	M	V	1
A	R	0	F	0	P	H	R	Α	5	E	0
R	U	W	0	R	D	C	0	U	R	P	N

Unit 7

- 1 Wrong.
- 2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
- 3 Your own answer.
- 4 /ik'splein/
- 5 It's the opposite of right or correct.
- 6 No, that's wrong.
- 7 A frying pan.
- 8 S-T-A-M-P.

People

1 na	ame	6	postcode
2 yo	u come	7	do
3 fr	om	8	'm/am
4 ex	actly	9	are you
5 Ih	ave	10	how old



Unit 10

		_	_	-		_						
	A	G	0	R	E	L	A	T	1	٧	E	5)
	G	(8)	1	0	G	Y	W	E	S	G	T	1
	K	1	O	A	U	G	Н	T	E	R	D	0
	0	S	Y	M	E	F	0	T	N	A	U	M
	A	T	В	X	Œ	U	S	В	A	N	0	1
	U	E	R	1	0	U	N	L	1	D	Q	(5)
	N	R	B	R	0	T	Н	E	R	F	U	0
1	U	1	P	W	U	N	C	L	E	Α	1	W
	L	N	0	1	S	T	1	C	A	T	M	ŭ
	0	L	W	F	1	S	N	E	P	Н	E	W
	e	A	R	E	(N)	T	3	J	0	E	T	1
	R	W	U	N	1	E	C	E	E	R	F	A
	-	_								-		ALC: YELL

- 2 1 My brother is eighteen years old.
 - 2 I was born in 1990.
 - 3 My sister is younger than me.
 - 4 His parents are divorced.
 - 5 There are five of us in my family.
 - 6 She is older than her brother.
 - 7 We spend a lot of time together.
 - 8 Who is the youngest in the family?

Unit 11

- 1 Using your hands: push, pick something up, hold, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb
- 2 1 door 6 a bag 2 a wall 7 a pencil 3 a radio 8 a tree 4 a bicycle 9 a book 5 a bicycle 10 a bed

Unit 12

1 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 B 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A

2 1	arm	3	hand	5	bottom
2	neck	4	foot		nose

Unit 13

- 1 Possible answers
 - He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middleaged.
 - 2 She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/young person.
 - 3 He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
 - 4 She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.
- 2 2 a child
 - 3 a teenager
 - 4 in your mid-twenties
 - 5 in your early thirties
 - 6 in your late thirties
 - 7 middle-aged
 - 8 in your early sixties
 - 9 elderly

Unit 14

1 Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

2 1	lazy	5	intelligent
2	shy		on my own
3	shared		funny
4	fun		organized

Unit 15

1 1 wont

		went	0	together
	2	married	7	up
	3	relationship	8	get
	4	get	9	couple
	5	had		
2	1	get	5	give
	2	become	6	become
	3	ls	7	get

Unit 16

4 see

1 1	excited	6	tired
2	hungry	7	scared
3	surprised	8	nervous
4	embarrassed		matter
5	worried	10	thirsty

2 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N 9 N 10 P

8 Is

Everyday life

Unit 17

- 1 1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
 - 2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
 - 3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
 - 4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
 - 5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
 - 6 I talk to my parents every evening.
 - 7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
 - 8 What time do you get to work in the morning?
- 2 1j 2i 3e 4b 5h 6a 7d 8f 9k 10g

Unit 18

1	1	socks	6	tie
	2	hat	7	jumper
	3	gloves		tights
	4	boots		T-shirt
	5	watch		belt
2	1	yellow	6	red
	2	green	7	orange
		purple		grey
		pink		pale/light blue
		brown		dark blue

- 3 1 a scarf
 - 2 a pair of jeans or some jeans
 - 3 some ties
 - 4 a pair of trousers or some trousers
 - 5 some shirts
 - 6 a jacket
 - 7 a pair of trainers or some trainers
 - 8 a pair of sandals or some sandals

Unit 19

1	1	take	9	cash desk
	2	loose	10	medium
	3	cheap	11	help
	4	size	12	wrong
	5	try	13	casual
	6	changing	14	assistant
		pay	15	leave
		horrible	16	need
2	1	looking	7	too
	2	take	8	size
	3	nice	9	lovely/nice
	4	on	10	them
	5	room	11	pay
	6	look	12	cash

Unit 20

110	2	21 31	71	31 01		
2	1	Lottery	5	price	9	earn
	2	sold	6	saved	10	paid
	3	bought	7	paid	11	bills
	4	cost	8	in	12	fare

Unit 21

1 1 a bit	4 a bit of
2 a lot of	5 a bit
3 a lot	6 a lot of
2 Across	Down
2 blows	1 lot
5 ice	3 storm
8 humid	4 windy

1 1E 2T 2T AE ET 6T

8	numia	4	winay
9	snow	6	shower
11	freezing	7	thunder
12	heavy	10	shines
13	dry	11	foggy

Unit 22

1	т	М	x	Œ	A	R	Z	(H)	0	(a)
	B	A	c	_	A	Ö	Н	E)	ĭ	0
	0	(s)	0	1	D	0	Y	A	M	R
	R	1	(F	L	U	L	Y	D	Z	E
	U	c) ~	A	H	0	E	A	K	Т
	1	K	W	E	S	В	1	C	R	н
	(T	ŏ	0	T	H	A	C	Н	E	R
	A	5	٧	E	C	E	G	E	L	0
	F	H	U	R	T	5)	D	E	M	Α
0	R	S	K	E	V	W	E	L	L	U

- 1 I've got a headache.
- 2 I've got a sore throat.
- 3 I've got toothache.
- 4 I've got backache.
- 5 I've got flu.
- 6 I feel sick.
- 7 I don't feel well.
- 8 My arm hurts.
- 9 I've got a pain in my ear.

1 something	6 Take
2 Try/Take	7 could
3 tablets	8 box
4 often	9 medicine
5 take	

Food and drink

Unit 24

Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham

Fish: tuna, salmon

Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

Unit 25

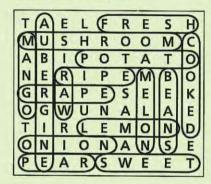
1 Possible answers

red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli,

strawberry

yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower

green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette



Unit 26

1 Possible answers

Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter

Carton: orange juice, milk

Box: eggs, matches, chocolates

Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine

Jar: jam, olives Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers

1 Could I have some sugar, please?

2 I'd like some sugar, please.

3 Have you got any sugar?

4 Anything else?

5 That's it, thanks.

6 How much (sugar) would you like?

Unit 27

1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.

2 W Is that to eat here or take away?

3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.

4 W Fine. Anything else?

5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.

6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.

7 W Have a seat.

Unit 28

1 1 fork, spoon 5 pepper 2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar 3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white

4 medium, well done 8 sparkling

2 1 W Are you ready to order?

C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.

W Right. And for your main course?

C Fillet steak with chips.

2 W Do you want red wine or white wine?

C Red wine, please.

W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?

3 At the end of the meal.

C Could I have the bill, please?

W Yes, of course.

Getting around

Unit 29

1 Does this bus go to The National Museum?

2 How many stops is it to the railway station?

3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?

4 How long does it take to get to the centre?

5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?

6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?

7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?

8 Do the buses run every ten minutes?

9 How long does it take to the centre?

10 How often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1 1 platform 6 journey 2 fast 7 carriage 3 miss 8 ticket 4 reserve 9 fare

5 timetable

The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 1 next train 4 leave 2 direct 5 get to 3 change 6 platform

Unit 31

1 1 The bank is on the right.

2 How do I get to the river?

3 Go along here and turn left.

4 Go straight on and turn right.

5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?

6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.

- 2 1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
 - 2 Go straight on and keep to going.
 - 3 Is there a post office near from here?
 - 4 It's on the your left. or It's on the your
 - 5 Turn to left and go straight on.
 - 6 It's the third turning on the right side.

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9 F 10 T
- 2 1 motorway 5 lane
 - 2 speed limit 6 traffic iams 3 overtake 7 rush hour
 - 4 accident 8 take

Unit 33

- 1 'no parking' 5 'sale'
- 2 'entrance' or 'way in' 6 out of order
- 3 'no vacancies' 7 'no exit'
- 4 'please do not disturb' 8 'no smoking'

Places

Unit 34

- 1 north 6 capital 2 south 7 river 3 coast; coast 8 mountain
- 4 enormous 9 beach 5 border 10 famous

Unit 35

- 1 1 a modern city 5 there's nothing to do 2 over a million 6 a quiet street
 - 3 north-east 7 clean
 - 8 fact 4 dangerous
- 7 on 2 1 of
 - 2 population 8 famous 3 historic 9 Statue
 - 4 palace
 - 10 Square 5 place 11 Park
 - 6 city 12 cosmopolitan

Unit 36

- 1 1 valley 5 grass 2 healthy 6 path 3 boat 7 lake 4 farmer 8 alone
- 2 1 horse 4 lonely
 - 2 grow 5 own 3 crops 6 countryside

Unit 37

- 1 1 shopping centre
 - 2 newsagent's
 - 3 chemist's
 - 4 hypermarket, supermarket
 - 5 baker's
 - 6 bookshop
 - 7 butcher's
 - 8 department store
 - 9 music shop
- 2 1 queue 6 stalls
 - 7 indoors 2 shopping 3 convenient 8 basket
 - 4 prefer 9 get
 - 5 market 10 checkout
 - The word in the grey squares is 'supermarket'.

Unit 38

- 1 1 bathroom 5 garage 2 kitchen 6 lift 7 garden 3 bedroom 4 study 8 home
- 2 1f 2b 3a 4g 5i 6h 7c 8e

Unit 39

- 1 1 dishwasher, sink 5 cupboard 2 washing machine 6 fridge 3 bin 7 freezer
 - 4 microwave 8 oven
- 2 1 put 4 Do, empty
 - 2 Put, turn 5 cook
 - 3 turn, out

- 1 Bedroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk Bathroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
- 2 1 put on or take off, make-up or tissues
 - 2 have, a razor or an electric razor
 - 3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
 - 4 do or brush, a brush or a comb
 - 5 have, soap

- 1 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
 - 3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
 - 5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
 - 8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
 - 9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
- 10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

Study and work

Unit 42

1

1	biology	7	geography
2	history		chemistry
3	literature		design and
4	physics		technology
5	maths/music	10	modern languages

5 maths/music 6 art

2 1j 2a 3g 4e 5i 6b 7f 8h 9d

3 1 badly 4 terrible/bad 2 failed 5 nursery 3 state 6 best

Unit 43

1 1 science 5 again 2 lasts 6 degree 3 terms 7 research

4 do/write 8 PhD or Doctor of Philosophy

2 People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician

Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics

Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essav

Unit 44

Possible answers

- 1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
- 2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
- 3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
- 4 retired, unemployed
- 5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
- 6 a businessman, a businesswoman

Unit 45

1	1 j	2 h	3 a	4 g	5 c	6 i	7 e	8 d	9 f
_									

2 1 in spend 2 time 5 earn/get 3 a 6 colleagues

Unit 46

1	1	laptop	5	backup copy
	2	keyboard		hard drive
	3	mouse mat	7	printout
	4	memory stick	8	webcam

2 1 copy 5 save 2 screen 6 print 3 cut 7 paste

4 mouse

The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

Unit 47

1 chatroom, broadband, download, website. online, search engine, inbox, junk mail

2 1 attachment 7 broadband 2 message 8 internet 3 online 9 receive 4 delete 10 use 5 fast 11 visit

6 send

Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

- 1 1 I love it, It's my favourite thing, It's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
 - 2 I quite enjoy it, It's quite enjoyable

3 I think it's OK

- 4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
- 5 I really hate it

2 1 interested

4 to

2 on

boring

3 driving

6 quite likes

- 1 1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
 - 2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
 - 3 football, rugby, ice hockey. volleyball, basketball
 - 4 a) tennis b) ice hockey
- 2 1 matches 4 scored 2 drew 5 goals 3 lost 6 top

Unit 50

1 1	favourite, go	4	instrument
	does	5	classical
3	repairs	6	do, spend

2 1 spending 4 play 2 going 5 arranging

3 games

Unit 51

- Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
 - 2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
 - 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
 - 4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
 - 5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
 - 6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
 - 7 'Beautiful liar' by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
 - 8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

Unit 52

- 1 1 war, violent 4 thriller, exciting 2 comedy, funny 5 love, romantic
 - 3 horror, frightening
- 2 1 about 5 reviews 2 in 6 director 3 stars 7 see

4 actor

Unit 53

1 I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible

road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

21c 2e 3d 4f 5b 6a

Holidays

Unit 54

1	arrange	6	book
2	currency	7	pack
3	hire	8	flight

4 go abroad 9 accommodation

5 holiday

Unit 55

1	1 h	2 a	3 d	4j	5 g	6f	7 i	8 k
		10 c						

2	1	stayed	5	delicious
		suite	6	night
	3	facilities	7	parking
	4	staff	8	book

Unit 56

1 1i 2e 3g 4h 5b 6a 7d 8f 9c

2	1 trolley	6	got
- 1	2 ticket	7	fastened
	3 scales	8	landed
	4 flight	9	collected
	delayed	10	went/walked

Unit 57

- 1 ... We flew to Marseille ...
- 2 ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
- 3 ... holiday resort by the sea ...
- 4 ... We rented an apartment ...
- 5 ... we went for a walk ...
- 6 ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
- 7 ... an hour or so ...
- 8 ... was perfect for the whole week ...

- 1 We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
- 2 Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
- 3 We always get lost in a new place.
- 4 She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
- 5 Did you visit the museum? (NOT at the museum)
- 6 There were lots of typical tourists.
- 7 There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
- 8 Have you got a guidebook about London, please?

1 1 post office 7 per cent 2 postcode 8 parcel 3 postman/ 9 currency postwoman 10 cash machine 4 postbox 11 change

5 postcards 6 put, put 12 commission 13 charge, charge

2 1 send 4 exchange rate 2 envelope/letter/parcel 5 into

3 deliver 6 bureau, change

Social English

Unit 60

1 15 2D 3S 4D 55 65 75 8S 9 D 10 S

2 1 hope to see you 5 shake hands again 6 see you soon 2 how are you? 7 nice to meet you 3 not bad 8 hi there 4 how do you do? 9 see you later

Unit 61

1 happy birthday

2 have a good weekend

3 congratulations

4 good luck 5 well done

6 welcome home

7 have a good holiday

8 Happy New Year

Unit 62

1 1 How many? 6 How long? 2 Why? 7 Whose? 3 How far? 8 Which? 4 How often? 9 Who?

5 Where?

2 1 How 4 often 2 do 5 long 3 does 6 kind of

3 Answers from a South Korean person

▶ I have a problem with speaking fluently and pronunciation.

1 I've got one brother.

2 I work at a travel agency.

3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.

4 More than ten hours a week.

5 For ten years.

6 I don't like playing games, but I like watching football.

Unit 63

1 1 you, I 6 1 2 1,1 7 1 3 you 8 you 4 you 9 you 5 1

2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

Unit 64

1 A Would you like to have lunch tomorrow? or Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?

B I'm afraid but I can't. or I'm sorry but I

can't.

2 A Would you like to go skiing this weekend? or Do you want to go skiing this weekend?

B Yes, that sounds fun! or That would be

3 A Would you like to come round here for a drink tonight?

B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.

4 A Do you want to come round for a meal at the weekend?

B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

1 shall 5 about 2 maybe 6 idea 3 could 7 Let 4 sure

Unit 66

1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want a drink? or Do you want a sandwich? Would you like a drink?

2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some help? or Do you need some help? Do you

want a hand?

3 No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.

5 Let me pay for the coffees. Shall I do that for you?

6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very much.

Possible answers

- 1 A I'm sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
 - B Never mind. or It doesn't matter. or Don't worry.
- 2 A I'm sorry I'm late.
 - B That's OK. or Don't worry.
- 3 A I'm really sorry, I've broken a cup.
 - B That's OK. or It doesn't matter.
- 4 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please? B Sure, no problem.

Unit 68

1	opinion	4	prefer
2	excellent	5	personally
3	disagree	6	a waste of

Unit 69

1	1	ring/call, at the	3	ring/phone
		moment	4	just a moment
	2	speaking	5	sent me a text

- 2 1 B Is that Cheryl?
 - 2 A Yes, speaking.
 - 3 B Hi. It's Keira.
 - 4 A Hello, Keira. How are you?
 - 5 B I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
 - 6 A Yes. Just a moment I'll get her.

4 rich

7 B Thanks.

Language

1 1 narrow

Unit 70

	2	dead	5	asleep
	3	noisy		
2	1	helpful	5	noisy
	2	common	6	unnecessary
	3	useless		clear
	4	strange	8	annoying
	T	ne word in grey		

Unit 71

- 1 1 We couldn't play the match with only ten players.
 - 2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
 - 3 The food is absolutely fantastic in that restaurant.
 - 4 Max didn't like the film but I thought it was quite good.
 - 5 The last film was good, but this is even better.
 - 6 My English is getting a bit better.

2 Possible answers

1	winter	4	16
2	awful	5	tired
3	slow	6	nice

Unit 72

	Across		Down
1	been	1	went
4	read	2	seen
6	took	3	bought
9	put	5	done
11	found	7	known
13	slept	8	ran
	sent	10	thought
15	forgot	12	left
		13	sat
		14	spent

Unit 73

- 1 1 I grew up in a village.
 - 2 Why don't you sit down?
 - 3 I must find out their address.
 - 4 She fell over in the street.
 - 5 Did you go out last night?
 - 6 Could you turn on the light? or Could you turn the light on?
 - 7 Look it up in your dictionary.
 - 8 Could I try them on?

2	1	gave up	4	take off
		going up	5	get on (well)
	3	go back	6	carry on

Unit 74

In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century

At: three o'clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight

On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

1	1	last week	5	this evening
	2	two days ago	6	tomorrow morning
	3	yesterday	7	tomorrow evening
		afternoon	8	next Monday
	4	last night	9	in ten days' time

- 2 1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
 - 2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
 - 3 I've lived in the house I bought since I got married.
 - 4 I've lived in Portugal for five years.
 - 5 Soon I'm going to have a baby.
 - 6 At the moment we're preparing a room for the baby.

ı	1	over	7	next to
	2	past	8	into
	3	near	9	out of
	4	above	10	opposite
	5	down	11	between
	6	across	12	through

- 2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
 - 2 past, across, into, out of, through ('near' and 'next to' are also possible)
- 3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom

At: school, home, a football match, work On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

Unit 77

- 1 1g 2i 3e 4h 5f 6d 7a 8b
- 2 1 because of 4 because 5 so 3 also 6 as well

Unit 78

- 1 1 When you're travelling on a long flight, always wear comfortable clothes.
 - 2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it's quiet.
 - 3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
 - 4 When you get off, don't leave anything on the plane.
 - 5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
 - 6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.
- 2 1 first of all 4 After that or Then
 - 2 while 5 finally 3 Then or After that 6 if

Unit 79

1 1 have 5 didn't 2 a 6 time 3 Did you have 7 a rest 4 Have 8 was, had

- 2 1 We had a break for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
 - 2 We had something to eat at the beach.
 - 3 My sister's/has got blonde hair.
 - 4 I was hot, so I had a shower/bath before dinner.
 - 5 We had a terrible/bad day at work. I hate my job!
 - 6 Have a lovely holiday/time in the Caribbean!
 - 7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't have any money.
 - 8 On Sunday, we just had a rest and did nothing.

- 1 arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8, receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5
- 2 Answers from a Hungarian person
 - 1 No, I'm happy in my current job.
 - 2 Yes, I get very tired when it's hot.
 - 3 I get about one or two messages a day.
 - 4 No.
 - 5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
 - 6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
 - 7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
 - 8 I got home at about ten o'clock last night.

Spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1	about	14	39B	do + noun	101
3A	Capital letters	16	40B	have + noun	103
3B	Saying and writing dates	17	42A	be good at something	109
4	People from a country	18	42B	at (the age of)	110
8	information	26	42C	exam (examination)	111
10B	How old are you?	29	43A	How long does it last?	112
11A	Irregular verbs	30	44	alan with jobs	114
13A	thin, fat, ugly	33	45B	Spend time doing something	117
13C	Other phrases for age	35	46A	keep	118
14A	What's like?	36	48A	like/love/hate + -ing	126
14B	really	37	48B	interesting/interested	127
15A	relationship	38	49B	Irregular verbs	129
15B	each other	39	51B	by	133
16B	get + adjective	41	52A	What kind of?	134
17A	usually and normally	46	53B	watch, see, listen, hear	137
17C	every and all	48	54	might + verb	141
18A	wear	49	55B	That's a shame/What a shame	143
18C	Plural nouns	50	58	should + verb	147
19B	too and very	52	60A	Introductions	153
19C	I'll take it/I'll leave it	53	60B	See you	154
20A	Money	54	61	cheers	155
21A	a lot (of)/a bit (of)	56	62A	whose and belong to	156
22A	be ill/sick	58	62B	which or what?	157
22B	should + verb	59	63A	Being polite	158
23	Asking for things in a chemist's	60	63B	lend and borrow	159
24	pig	65	64	Would you like to	
25B	salad	67		or Do you want to?	160
26A	Uncountable nouns	68	65	Saying no	161
26B	tin and can	69	66A	Saying thank you	162
26C	how much and how many	70	66B	let me + verb	163
27	Yes, please? and Yes, please.	71	67	(I'm) sorry	164
28C	another or some more	74	69A	Saying phone numbers	166
29	How long does it take?	78	70A	Position of adjectives	172
30A	last	80	71B	Gradable and ungradable	
30B	book something in advance	81		adjectives	175
31	Excuse me	82	72B	ever	177
35A	place	91	73A	Phrasal verbs	178
36B	alone and lonely	95	74	at	180
37A	Noun + shop	96	75B	for and since	182
38B	flat, house and home	99	79A	have and have got	190
			80	get	192

Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. /eɪ 'em/ 2	alone /ə'ləon/ 36
ATM /er ti: 'em/ 59	along /ə'lɒŋ/ 31, 76
able /'eibl/ 51	also /ˈɔːlsəo/ 77
about (= approximately) /əˈbaot/ 1	altogether /ɔ:ltə'geðə(r)/ 20
about (= the subject is) /ə'baot/ 52	always /'ɔ:lweiz/ 17
above /a'bav/ 76	American /ə'merikən/ 4
abroad /ə'brɔːd/ 54	and /ænd, and/ 77
absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli/ 71	and as in and you /ænd, ond/ 61
accept /ək'sept/ 66	angry /ˈæŋgri/ 16
access as in internet access /'ækses/ 55	animal /ˈænɪml/ 24
accessories /ək'sesəriz/ 18	ankle /'æŋkl/ 12
accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ 29	annoying /əˈnɔɹɪŋ/ 70
accommodation /əkpmə'deɪʃn/ 54	another /əˈnʌðə(r)/ 28
account as in bank account /ə'kaont/ 20	answer the phone /a:nsə ðə 'fəon/ 45
across /əˈkrɒs/ 76	antiseptic /ænti'septik/ 23
action /'ækʃn/ 52	anything else? /eniθιη 'els/ 26
actor /'æktə(r)/ 52	apartment /ə'pa:tmənt/ 57
actress /ˈæktrəs/ 52	apologize /əˈpɒlədʒaɪz/ 67
address /ə'dres/ 8, 9, 47, 59	apple /ˈæpl/ 25
adjective /ˈædʒɪktɪv/ 6	appointment /ə'pəɪntmənt/ 75
adult /'ædʌlt/ 13	Arabic /ˈærəbik/ 4
advance as in in advance /əd'vo:ns/ 30	architect /'a:kitekt/ 43
adverb /'ædvs:b/ 6	architecture /ˈɑːkɪtektʃə(r)/ 43
advert /'ædvs:t/ 53	area /'eəriə/ 4, 36, 69
advertisement /əd'vaxtısmənt/ 53	Argentina /aːdʒənˈtiːnə/ 4
advice /əd'vais/ 15	Argentinian /a:dʒən'tıniən/ 4
afraid as in I'm afraid /ə'freid/ 63, 64	arm /ɑ:m/ 12
afraid as in I'm afraid not /ə'freid/ 55	armchair /'a:mtsea(r)/ 41
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ 4	arrange /əˈreɪndʒ/ 54
after $\frac{\alpha \cdot \text{fta}(r)}{2.75}$	arranging as in flower arranging /əˈreɪndʒɪŋ/ 50
after that /'a:ftə ðæt/ 78	art /oxt/ 42
afternoon /a:ftə'nu:n/ 2,60	art gallery /a:t gæləri/ 58
afterwards /'a:ftəwədz/ 78	article /ˈɑːtɪkl/ 53
again /ə'gen/ 43, 60	article as in (in)definite article /'a:tikl/ 7
against /ə'genst/ 49	as well /əz 'wel/ 77
ago /əˈɡəʊ/ 75	Asia /'eɪʒə/ 4
agree, agree with someone /ə'griz/ 68	asleep /əˈsliːp/ 70
ahead as in go ahead /ə'hed/ 63	at as in be good at /æt, ət/ 42
air conditioning /'eə kəndıʃənɪŋ/ 55	at (= place) /æt, ət/ 76
airline /'eəlam/ 45	at (= time) /æt, ət/ 2, 74
airport /'eapa:t/ 56	attachment /ə'tætʃmənt/ 47
aisle seat /'ail sixt/ 56	attractive /ə'træktıv/ 13
album /ˈælbəm/ 51	aubergine //əʊbəʒiːn/ 25
alive /əˈlaɪv/ 70	aunt /a:nt/ 10
all /ɔːl/ 17, 53	Australasia /pstrəˈleɪʒə/ 4
all as in first of all /5:1/ 78	Australia /p'strerlio/ 4
all as in that's all /o:1/ 26	Australian /p'streilian/ 4
all right /o:l 'rait/ 63, 67	autumn /'o:təm/ 3
almost /ˈɔːlməʊst/ 2	average /ˈævərɪdʒ/ 13

avocado /ævəˈkɑːdəʊ/ 25 awake /a'weik/ 70 awful /'o:fl/ 19 BA (Bachelor of Arts) /bi: 'ei (bætfələr əv 'arts)/ 43 BSc (Bachelor of Science) /bi: es 'si: (bætsələr əv 'sarəns)/ 43 baby /'berbi/ 13, 15 back /bæk/ 12 backache /'bækeik/ 22 backup /'bækʌp/ 46 bacon /'beikən/ 24 bad as in not bad /bæd/ 60 badly as in do badly /'bædli/ 42 bag /bæq/ 5,56 baggage /'bæqid3/ 56 baguette /bæ'get/ 27 baker's /'beikəz/ 37 balcony /'bælkəni/ 38 ball /ba:1/ 49 banana /bəˈnɑːnə/ 25 band /bænd/ 51 bank account /'bænk əkaont/ 20 bar /ba:(r)/ 26 basement /'beismont/ 38 basket /'baskit/ 37 basket (used in basketball) /'baskit/ 49 basketball /'baskitba:l/ 49 bath /ba:0/ 40, 79 bathroom /'ba:θru:m/ 38 battery /'bæt(ə)ri/ 69 be /biz, bi/ 16 beach /bi:tf/ 34, 57 beans /bi:nz/ 25 beard /biod/ 13 beat /bi:t/ 49 beautiful /'bju:tɪfl/ 13 because /bi'kpz, -kəz/ 77 because of /bi'koz, -kəz əv/ 77 become /bi'kam/ 15 bed /bed/ 17, 22 bed as in single bed /bed/ 40 bedroom /'bedru:m/ 38 bedside table /bedsaid 'teibl/ 40 beef /bi:f/ 24 before /bi'fo:(r)/ 75 beginning /bi'qinin/ 46 behind /bi'haind/ 76 believe /br'lizy/ 53 bell /bel/ 33 belong /br'lon/ 62 below /bi'lau/ 76 belt /belt/ 18 belt as in seat belt /belt/ 56 best /best/ 42

best friend /best 'frend/ 15 between /bi'twi:n/ 7 between /bi'twi:n/ 76 bicycle /'baisikl/ 36 bidet /'bi:det/ 40 big /big/ 19 bike /bark/ 36 bill /bil/ 20, 28 bin as in rubbish bin /bm/ 39 biology /bar pladai/ 42 bird /ba:d/ 36 birth as in date of birth /b3:0/ 9 birthday /'ba;θdei/ 3, 61 biscuits /'biskits/ 26 bit as in a bit, a bit of /bit/ 21 bitter /'bitə(r)/ 25 black /blæk/ 13, 18 black coffee /blæk 'kpfi/ 27 blanket /'blænkit/ 40 block of flats /blok əv 'flæts/ 38 blonde /blond/ 13 blow /blau/ 21 blue /blu:/ 18 board n /boxd/ 5 board pen /'bo:d pen/ 5 boarding /'bo:din/ 56 boarding card /'bo:din ka:d/ 56 boat /bout/ 36 boiled /boild/ 28 boiling /boilin/ 16 book v /bok/ 30, 54, 55 bookshelf /'bokfelf/ 41 boots /bu:ts/ 18 border /'bo:do(r)/ 34 boring /borin/ 48 born as in be born /born/ 10 borrow /'bprau/ 63 boss /bps/ 44 bottle /'botl/ 26, 28 bottom (= part of the body) /'bptəm/ 12 bottom (= the lowest part) /'botom/ 59 bowl /baul/ 28 box /bpks/ 26 box as in letter box /boks/ 59 bovfriend /'boffrend/ 10, 15 Brazil /brəˈzɪl/ 4 Brazilian /brəˈzɪliən/ 4 bread /bred/ 26, 27 break v /breik/ 11.67 break n /breik/ 79 breakfast /'brekfəst/ 17, 79 breeze /bri:z/ 21 bridge /brid3/ 35 bring /brin/ 63 Britain / britn/ 4 broadband /'bro:dbænd/ 47

brother /'braðə(r)/ 10 brother-in-law /'braðər ın lɔz/ 10 brown /braon/ 13, 18, 27 brush /braf/ 40 builder /'bildə(r)/ 44 building /'bildin/ 35, 45 bureau de change /bjoərəo də 'fa:n3/ 59 bus /bas/ 29 bus driver /'bas drawə(r)/ 44 bus stop /'bas stop/ 29 business studies /'biznes stadiz/ 43 businessman / biznasman/ 43, 44 businesswoman /'bizneswomen/ 43, 44 busy (= a lot of things happening) /'bizi/ 32.35 busy (= a lot of things to do) /'bizi/ 64 busy (= engaged) /'bizi/ 69 but /bat, bet/ 77 butcher's /'botsəz/ 37 butter /'batə(r)/ 26 buy /bar/ 20 by /bai/ 51 bye bye, bye /'bar bar, bar/ 60 CD /si: 'di:/ 5 CD player /si: 'di: pleiə(r)/ 5 cabbage /'kæbid3/ 25 cake /keik/ 26 call as in last call /ko:1/ 56

call v /ko:1/69 call someone back /kol samwan 'bæk/ 69 called /kɔ:ld/ 7 camera as in speed camera /'kæmərə/ 69 camping /'kæmpɪŋ/ 50 can v = be able to) /kæn, kən/ 19, 66 can n (= container) / kæn / 26can v (= permission) /kæn, kən/ 63 can v = request /kæn, kən/ 59, 63, 69 Canada /'kænədə/ 4 Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/ 4 Cantonese /kæntəˈniːz/ 4 capital /'kæpitl/ 34 cappuccino /kæpə'tfi:nəu/ 27 car park /'ka: pa:k/ 32 card as in boarding card /ka:d/ 56 card as in credit card /ka:d/ 19 card as in debit card /ka:d/ 20 cards /ka:dz/ 50 carpet /'ka:prt/ 41 carriage /'kærɪdʒ/ 30 carrot /'kærət/ 25 carry /'kæri/ 11 carry on (with something) /kæri 'on (wið samθm)/ 73 carton /'ka:tn/ 26 cartoon /kg:'tu:n/ 52 cash n /kæs/ 20

cash desk /'kæf desk/ 19 cash machine /'kæſ məʃi:n/ 59 cassette player /kə'set pleiə(r)/ 5 castle /'karsl/ 35 casual /'kæʒuəl/ 19 catch /kæt[/ 30 cathedral /kə'θi:drəl/ 35 cauliflower /'kpliflauə(r)/ 25 ceiling /'si:lm/ 41 celebrity /sə'lebrəti/ 53 cellist /'tfelist/ 51 cello /'tfelou/ 51 Central America /sentral a merika/ 4 central heating /sentral 'hi:tin/ 55 centre as in shopping centre /'sentə(r)/ 37 centre as in town centre /'sentə(r)/ 38 century /'sentfori/ 74 certainly /'sa:tnli/ 28 chair /t[ea(r)/ 5 change n /tfeind3/ 20 change v /tseind3/ 30, 59 change places /tfemd3 'pleisiz/ 63 changeable /'tfeind3obl/ 21 changing room /'tfeindzin ru:m/ 19 charge /tfa:d3/ 59 chart as in singles chart /t[a:t/ 51 chat /tfæt/ 47 chatroom /'tfætru:m/ 47 cheap /t[i:p/ 19 check as in check your emails /tfek/ 47 check-in, check-in desk /'tsek m, 'tsek m desk/ 56 checkout /'tsekaut/ 37 cheek /tsi:k/ 12 cheers /tsiaz/ 61 cheese /tfi:z/ 26 chef /fef/ 44 chemist /'kemist/ 22 chemist's /'kemists/ 22, 23, 37 chemistry /'kemistri/ 42 cheque /tfek/ 20 cherry /'tseri/ 25 chest /tfest/ 12 chest of drawers /tsest əv 'dro:z/ 40 chicken /'tsikin/ 24 child /tfarld/ 13 children /'tsildren/ 8, 13 chilli /'tstli/ 25 chin /tfm/ 12 China /'tfamə/ 4 Chinese /tsar'ni:z/ 4 chips /tfrps/ 28 chocolate /'tfpklət/ 26 choose /tfu:z/ 37 Christmas /'krɪsməs/ 3 church /tsats/ 35

cooking /'kukin/ 50 cinema /'sməmə/ 50, 52 cool /ku:l/ 21 circle v /'sa:kl/ Starter copy n, v /'kppi/ 46 city /'sıti/ 35 corner /'kɔːnə(r)/ 31 classical /'klæsikl/ 50, 51 clean v /kli:n/ 17, 39, 40 correct v /kə'rekt/ Starter, 7 cosmopolitan /kpzmə'pplıtən/ 35 clean adj /kli:n/ 35 cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 44 cost v /kpst/ 20 cotton wool /kptn 'wol/ 23 clear /klip(r)/ 70 cough /kpf/ 22 clever /'klevə(r)/ 14 could (= permission) /kod/ 63 click on something /'klik on samθin/ 46 could (= request) /kvd/ 7, 23, 63 client /'klaient/ 45 climb /klaım/ 11 could (= suggestion) /kod/ 64 countryside /'kantrisaid/ 36 clock as in o'clock /klpk/ 2, 30 couple (= two people in a relationship) /'kapl/ 15 close v /klaoz/ 11,62 couple as in a couple of minutes /'kapl/ 27 closed as in flight closed /klauzd/ 56 closest friend /klausist 'frend/ 15 courgette /kuə'zet/ 25 course (= of study) /ko:s/ 43 cloud /klaud/ 21 course (= part of a meal) /kp:s/ 28 cloudy /'klaudi/ 21 clove /kləuv/ 25 court /ko:t/ 49 coast /kəust/ 34 cousin /'kazn/ 10 cow /kau/ 24 coat /kəut/ 18 crab /kræb/ 24 code /kəud/ 69 coffee /'kpfi/ 27 crazy /'kreizi/ 70 coffee table /'kpfi teibl/ 41 cream adj /kri:m/ 18 cream n /kri:m/ 23 coin /kom/ 20 cold adj /kəvld/ 21 credit card /'kredit ka:d/ 19, 20 cold n /kəvld/ 22 croissant /'kwæspn/ 27 crop /krpp/ 36 colleague /'kpli:q/ 45 collect (= keep together) /kə'lekt/ 50 cross out /krps 'aut/ Starter crossing as in pedestrian crossing /'krpsin/ 32 collect (= pick up) /kə'lekt/ 56 college /'kplid3/ 42 crowded /'kraudid/ 35 colour /'kalə(r)/ 13 cucumber /'kju:kambə(r)/ 25 cup /kap/ 39 comb /kəʊm/ 40 cupboard /'kabad/ 39 come from /'kam from, from/ 4,8 come round /kam 'raund/ 17,64 curly /'ks:li/ 13 currency /'karənsi/ 54, 59 comedy /'kpmadi/ 52 curtain /'ks:tn/ 41 comfortable /'kamf(ə)təbl/ 19 cushion /'kusn/ 41 commission /kə'mıſn/ 59 customer /'kastəmə(r)/ 19, 23 common /'komən/ 70 customs /'kastəmz/ 56 company /'kampəni/ 45 complete v /kəm'pli:t/ Starter cut (= make a wound) /knt/ 23 cut (= remove) /kat/ 46 complete opposites /kəmpli:t 'ppəzits/ 14 composer /kəm'pəuzə(r)/ 51 Czech /t[ek/ 4 Czech Republic /tsek ri'pablik/ 4 computer game /kəm'pju:tə geim/ 50 computer science /kəmpju:tə 'saɪəns/ 43 concert /'konsət/ 51 DVD player /di: vi: 'di: pleiə(r)/ 41 conditioning as in air conditioning dad /dæd/ 10 /kən'dı(ənin/ 55 damp /dæmp/ 21 conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ 51 dance /da:ns/ 11 confusing /kənˈfjuːzɪŋ/ 70 dangerous /'deindzərəs/ 35 congratulations /kəngrætʃu'leɪʃnz/ 61 dark /da:k/ 13, 18 continue (at school) /kəntınju: (ət 'sku:l)/ 42 data /dertə/ 47 convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 37 date /dent/ 3, 47, 74 cook v /kok/ 39 date of birth /deit av 'ba:0/ 9 cooked /kokt/ 25 daughter /'do:to(r)/ 10 cooker /'kukə(r)/ 39 day /dei/ 3, 45

day as in have a nice day /dei/ 61 double /'dabl/ 7 daytime /'dertaim/ 9 double room /'dabl ru:m/ 55 dead /ded/ 70 down as in go down /daon/ 76 debit card /'debit kg:d/ 20 download /daun'loud/ 47, 51 declare as in nothing to declare /di'kleə(r)/ 33 downstairs /daon'steaz/ 38 definite article /definat 'a:tikl/ 6 draw /dray/ 49 degree /dr'ari:/ 43 drawers as in chest of drawers /drazz/ 40 delayed /dr'leid/ 56 drawing /'dro:in/ 50 delete /dɪ'li:t/ 47 dress /dres/ 18 deli(catessen) /'deli, delikə'tesən/ 37 drink n /drink/ 79 delicious /dr/lr[əs/ 55 drive /draw/ 32 deliver /dr'livə(r)/ 37, 59 driver /'draivə(r)/ 44 dentist /'dentist/ 44 drop /drop/ 11 departed /dr'pa:tid/ 56 drums /dramz/ 51 department store /di'pa:tmənt sto:(r)/ 37 drummer /'dramə(r)/ 51 departure /dr'pa:t[ə(r)/ 56 dry /drai/ 21 departures /di'pa:t[əz/ 56 duck /dnk/ 24 design /dr'zam/ 45 during the week /djuərin ðə 'wi:k/ 17 design and technology /dizain ən tek'nplədzi/ 42 each /i:tf/ 20 desk /desk/ 5, 40 each other /i:tʃ 'xðə(r)/ 15 desk as in cash desk /desk/ 19 ear /19(r)/ 12 dessert /di'z3:t/ 28 early as in early twenties /'a:li/ 17 details /'di:terlz/ 55 earn /3m/ 20, 45 diary /'daɪəri/ 75 east /i:st/ 34, 35 dictionary /'dikfanri/ 5 Easter /'i:stə(r)/ 61 die /dai/ 53 economics /i:kə'npmiks/ 43 difference /'difrens/ 7 economist /1'kpnəmist/ 43 different /'difrant/ Starter egg /eq/ 26 dining room /'damin ru:m/ 38 Egypt /'i:d3ipt/ 4 dinner /'dinə(r)/ 17.79 Egyptian /i'dzip[n/ 4 direct /də'rekt, dai-, di-/ 30 elderly /'eldəli/ 13 director /də'rektə(r), dai-, di-/ 52 electric razor /rlektrik 'reizə(r)/ 40 dirty /'da:ti/ 35 else as in anything else? /els/ 26 disagree /disə'gri:/ 68 email address /'i:meil ədres/ 9, 47 disaster /dr'za:stə(r)/ 53 embarrassed /m'bærəst/ 16 discuss /dr'skas/ 45 empty adj, v /'empti/ 39 dishwasher /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/ 39 en suite /pn 'swi:t/ 55 disk /disk/ 46 end /end/ 46 disturb as in please do not disturb /dr'sta:b/ 33 engaged /m'qeid3d/ 69 divorced /di'vo:st/ 15 engine as in search engine /'end3m/ 47 do as in do a degree, do research /du:/ 43 engineer /end31'n19(r)/ 43 do as in do homework /du:/ 42 engineering /endʒi'niərin/ 43 do as in do the shopping, do the ironing England /'ingland/ 4 /du:/ 17, 37, 39 English /'mgliss/ 4 do as in do your hair /du:/ 40 enjoy /in'd331/ 48 do as in How do you do? /du:/ 60 enjoyable /m'dzərəbl/ 48 do as in What do you do? /du:/ 8, 17 enormous /i'no:mas/ 34 do the ironing /du: ði 'aɪənɪŋ/ 39 enter /'entə(r)/ 20 do the shopping /du: ðə 'fppin/ 17, 37, 39 entrance /'entrans/ 33 do well /du: 'wel/ 42 entry as in no entry /'entri/ 33 doctor /'dpktə(r)/ 43 envelope /'envələup/ 59 document /'dokjement/ 46 equipment /i'kwipmont/ 49 dog /dpg/ 36 especially /i'spe[əli/ 71 don't worry /'doont wari/ 66 espresso /e'spresau/ 27 door as in front door /do:(r)/ 38 essay /'esei/ 43

Europe /'iuərəp/ 4 even /'i:vn/ 71 evening /'i:vnin/ 2, 60, 75 event /i'vent/ 53 ever /evə(r)/ 72 every /'evri/ 17, 29 exactly /ig'zæktli/ 8 exams /ig'zæmz/ 42 ex-boyfriend /eks 'boyfrend/ 15 excellent /'eksələnt/ 68 exchange rate /iks'tfeind3 reit/ 59 excited /ik'saitid/ 16 exciting /ik'saitin/ 52 excuse me /ık'skju:z mi:/ 29, 31 ex-girlfriend /eks 'qs:lfrend/ 15 ex-husband /eks 'hazband/ 15 exit /'eksit/ 33 expensive /ik'spensiv/ 19 explain /ik'splein/ 7 extremely /ik'stri:mli/ 71 ex-wife /eks 'waif/ 15 eve /ai/ 12

face /feis/ 12 facilities /fə'sılətiz/ 55 fact /fækt/ 35 factory /'fæktəri/ 45 fail an exam /feil on iq'zæm/ 42 fall over /fo:1 'auva(r)/ 11, 73 false /fo:ls, fols/ Starter family name /'fæməli nem/ 8 family tree /fæməli 'tri:/ 10 famous /'feiməs/ 34, 51 fantastic /fæn'tæstik/ 48 far /fa:(r)/ 32, 62 Far East /fo:r 'i:st/ 4 fare /fep(r)/ 20, 30 farm /fa:m/ 36 farmer /'fa:mə(r)/ 36 fast /fa:st/ 30, 47 fasten /'fa:sn/ 56 fat /fæt/ 13 father /'fa:ðə(r)/ 10 favourite /'fervorit/ 48 feel /fi:1/ 16, 22 feet /fi:t/ 12 few as in a few /fju:/ 36 field /fi:ld/ 36 fill /fil/ 37 fillet /'filit/ 28 film /film/ 17, 52 final score /faml 'sko:(r)/ 49 finally /'faməli/ 78 find /famd/ 54 find out /famd 'aut/ 53, 73 fine (= in good health) /fam/ 60 fine (= OK) / fam / 60, 63fingers /'fingez/ 12 finish /'finis/ 17,63 fireplace /'faippleis/ 41 first adv /f3:st/ 78 first adi /fa:st/ 8 first half /fa:st 'ho:f/ 49 first of all /f3:st av 'a:1/ 78 firstly /'fa:stli/ 78 fish /fif/ 24 fishing /'fr(m/ 50 fit /frt/ 19 flat adj /flæt/ 69 flat n /flæt/ 38 flatmate /'flætmeit/ 15 flight /flatt/ 54, 56 flight closed /flant 'klauzd/ 56 floor (= level of a building) $\frac{flo:(r)}{38}$ floor (= surface you walk on) /flo:(r)/ 41 flower /'flavo(r)/ 36 flower arranging /'flavor oreindzin/ 50 flu /flu:/ 22 fly /flat/ 57 fog /fpg/ 21 foggy /'fpqi/ 21 folder (= for holding papers) /'faulda(r)/ 5 folder (= on a computer) /'faulda(r)/ 46 foot /fot/ 12 football /'futbo:1/ 49 for $f_{2}(r)$, $f_{2}(r)/75$ for a while /for a 'wail/ 22 forecast as in weather forecast /'fo:ka:st/ 53 foreign /'foren/ 54 forename /'fo:neim/ 9 forget /fa'get/ 67 fork /fo:k/ 28 fortunately /'fo:t[ənətli/ 43 forward v /'fo:wod/ 47 France /frains/ 4 free /fri:/ 20 freezer /'fri:zə(r)/ 39 freezing /'fri:zin/ 16, 21 French /frentf/ 4 fresh /fres/ 25 fresh food /fref 'fu:d/ 36 fridge /frid3/ 39 fried /fraid/ 28 friend as in best/closest friend /frend/ 15 friendly /'frendli/ 14 frightened /'fraitnd/ 16 frightening /'fraitnin/ 52 from (= origin) /from, from/ 4 from (= time) /from, from/ 45 front door /frant 'do:(r)/ 38 frozen /'frauzn/ 25 frying pan /'fram pæn/ 39

full /fol/ 37, 39	go out /gəʊ 'aʊt/ 17, 73
full-time /'fol taim/ 45	go out for (a meal/a drink)
fun /fan/ 14, 48	/gəu 'aut fə(r)/ 64, 73
funny /'fani/ 14, 52	go out with someone /goo 'aut wið samwan/ 15
furniture /'fa:nitfa(r)/ 41	go sightseeing /gəʊ ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
• 35 /	go to primary school /goo to 'praimeri sku:l/ 42
GP (general practitioner)	go up /gəʊ 'ʌp/ 73
/dʒi: 'pi:, dʒenrəl præk'tɪʃənə(r)/ 22	goal /goul/ 49
gallery as in art gallery /'gæləri/ 58	good afternoon /'god a:ftənu:n/ 60
	good at something /'god ət samθιη/ 42
game /gem/ 49	good evening / god ivnin/ 60
garage /ˈgærdɪʒ, ˈgærɪdʒ/ 38	good-looking /god 'lokin/ 13
garden /'gardn/ 38	good luck / god lak/ 61
gardening /ˈgɑːdnɪŋ/ 50	good morning /'god mo:nin/ 60
garlic /ˈgɑːlɪk/ 25	good to meet you /god tə 'mixt jux/ 60
gate /gert/ 56	goodbye /gud'bai/ 60
gents /dzents/ 33	goodnight /god'nart/ 60, 61
geography /dʒi'ɒgrəfi/ 42	grade /greid/ 42
German /dʒs:mən/ 4	graduate n / 'grædʒuət/ 43
Germany /ˈdʒɜːməni/ 4	graduate v / 'grædzueit/ 43
get (= arrive) /get/ 30, 31, 80	
get (= become) /get/ 16, 80	grams /græmz/ 26
get (= buy) /get/ 80	granddaughter /ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ 10
get (= fetch) /get/ 69	grandfather /ˈgrænfɑːðə(r)/ 10
get (= obtain) /get/ 42, 80	grandmother /'grænmʌðə(r)/ 10
get (= receive) /get/ 47, 80	grandson /ˈgrænsʌn/ 10
get (= travel by) /get/ 29, 30, 57, 80	grapes /greips/ 25
get a grade /get ə 'greid/ 42	grass /grass/ 36
get a job /get ə 'dʒɒb/ 43	great /great/ 55, 64, 65
get an email /get ən 'i:meil/ 47	Great Britain / great brita/ 4
get divorced /get di'vo:st/ 10	Greece /gris/ 4
get dressed /get 'drest/ 17	Greek /gri:k/ 4
get lost /get 'lost/ 58	green /gri:n/ 18
get married /get 'mærid/ 10, 15	grey /grei/ 13, 18
get off /get 'pf/ 11, 29, 30, 56	grilled /grild/ 28
get on /get 'on/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73	ground floor /graund 'flo:(r)/ 38
get on with someone /get 'on wið samwan/ 15	group /gru:p/ 51
get to know someone /get to 'noo samwan/ 15	grow /grou/ 36
get to work /get tə 'ws:k/ 17	grow up /grao 'Ap/ 73
get up /get 'Ap/ 17	guests /gests/ 55
girlfriend /'gs:lfrend/ 10, 15	guide /gaid/ 58
give /grv/ 12, 15, 72	guidebook / gaidbok/ 58
give someone a hand /grv samwan a 'hænd/ 66	guitar /gı'ta:(r)/ 50, 51
give something up /grv samθιη 'ap/ 73	gym /dʒɪm/ 17, 50, 55
glass /gla:s/ 28	
glasses /'gla:siz/ 18	hair /heə(r)/ 12,40
gloves /glavz/ 18	hairdresser /'headresa(r)/ 44
go (= do something) /gəv/ 17, 22, 50	half /ha:f/ 26, 49
go (= move or travel) $\frac{1}{30}$ 31, 33	half past /'ha:f pa:st/ 2
go ahead /gəu ə'hed/ 63	half price /hq:f 'prais/ 20
go and see /gəu ən ˈsiː/ 22	half-time /hq:f 'taım/ 49
go back /gəu 'bæk/ 73	ham /hæm/ 24
go down /gəʊ 'daʊn/ 76	hand (= part of the body) /hænd/ 12
go for a walk /gəʊ fər ə 'wɔːk/ 57	hand as in give someone a hand /hænd/ 66
go on a (guided) tour	hand luggage /'hænd lʌgɪdʒ/ 56
/gəu pn ə (gaidid) 'tuə(r)/ 58	handbag /ˈhændbæg/ 18
go online /gəo on'lam/ 47	hands as in shake hands /hændz/ 60

full /fol/ 37, 39

happen /'hæpən/ 53 happy /'hæpi/ 16 happy birthday /hæpi 'ba:0dei/ 61 happy Christmas /hæpi 'krısməs/ 61 happy New Year /hæpi nju: 'jıə(r)/ 61 hard adv /ha:d/ 42 hard copy /ha:d 'kppi/ 46 hard drive /ha:d 'draw/ 46 hardly ever /ha:dli 'evə(r)/ 17 hardworking /ha:d'ws:km/ 14 hat /hæt/ 18 hate /hert/ 48 have /hæv, həv/ 79 have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69 have (= eat/drink) /hæv/ 28 have used in greetings /hæv/ 61 have a baby /hæv ə 'beibi/ 15 have a seat /hæv ə 'si:t/ 27 have got /hæv 'qpt/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80 have got to /hæv 'got tu:, tə/ 60 have to /'hæf tu:, tə/ 45 head /hed/ 12 headache /'hedeik/ 22 healthy /'helθi/ 36 hear /hia(r)/ 53 heating as in central heating /'hi:tm/ 55 heavy /hevi/ 21 height /hart/ 13 hello /he'ləu/ 60 help /help/ 19,66 helpful /'helpfl/ 55, 70 hi, hi there /hai, 'hai ðeə(r)/ 60 high /hai/ 34, 45 hill /hil/ 36 hire /'haɪə(r)/ 54 historic /hi'storik/ 35 history /hist(ə)ri/ 42 hob /hpb/ 39 hobby /'hobi/ 50 hockey as in ice hockey /'hoki/ 49 hold /haold/ 11 holiday /holodei/ 54, 61, 79 home /hoom/ 38 homework /'homws:k/ 39, 42 hope /hoop/ 60 horrible /'horabl/ 14, 19 horror /hpra(r)/ 52 horse /hoss/ 36 hospital /hospitl/ 45 hot /hpt/ 21 hours /'aoəz/ 45 house /haos/ 38 househusband / haoshazband/ 44 housewife /'hauswaif/ 44 How about you? /hav əbaut 'ju:/ 62 How are things? /hao ə 'θınz/ 60

How are you? /hav a 'ju:/ 60 How do you do? /hau do jo 'du:/ 60 how far /'hav fax(r)/ 32, 62 how long (= length) /'hao lon/ 13 how long (= time) /hav lon/ 29, 62 how many /'hao meni/ 26, 62 how much /'hav mats/ 13, 26, 45, 59 how often /'hau pfn, pftən/ 62 how old /'hao əold/ 8, 10 however /hao'evə(r)/ 77 humid /'hju:mid/ 21 hundred / handred/ 1 Hungarian /hʌŋˈqeəriən/ 4 Hungary /'hʌŋgəri/ 4 hungry /hʌngri/ 16 hurt /ha:t/ 22 husband /'hazbənd/ 10 hypermarket /'haɪpəma:kit/ 37

ICT (information communication technology) /ar si: 'ti: (ımfəmersn kəmju:nrkersn tek'nplədzi)/ IT (information technology) /aı 'ti: (infəmeisn tek'nplədzi)/ 42 ice /ais/ 21 ice cream /ais 'krim/ 28 ice hockey /'ars hoki/ 49 icon /'arkon/ 46 icy /'aisi/ 21 I'd like /aid 'laik/ 26, 27 I'd like to /aid 'laik tu:, tə/ 55 I'd love to /aid 'lav tu:, tə/ 64 idea /ar'dıə/ 65 if /If/ 78 ill as in be/feel ill /11/ 16, 22 I'll leave it/them /ail 'lizv it, ðəm/ 19 I'm afraid /aim ə'freid/ 55, 63, 64 I'm afraid not /aim əfreid 'not/ 55 impossible /im'posəbl/ 70 in (= place) /m/ 76 in (= taking part) /m/ 52 in (= time) /m/2.74in as in Who's in it? /m/ 52 in a minute /m a 'mmt/ 75 in advance /m əd'va:ns/ 30 in front of /in 'frant əv/ 76 in love /m 'lav/ 16 in (my twenties, etc.) /in (mai 'twentiz)/ 13 in order to /m 'o:do to/ 77 in the north /m ðə 'no:0/ 34 in the paper /m ðə 'peipə(r)/ 53 inbox /'mboks/ 47 included as in included in the price /in'klu:did/ 55 indefinite article /indefinat 'a:tikl/ 6 India /'mdia/ 4

Indian /'mdian/ 4 indoors /m'do:z/ 37 industrial /m'dastrial/ 35 information /mfə'mer[n/ 8 inland /m'lænd/ 34 inside /m'sard/ 38 instrument as in musical instrument /'instramant/ 50 insurance /m'[vərəns/ 54 intelligent /m'telidzent/ 14 interested /'intrəstid/ 48 interesting /'intrəstin/ 35, 48 internet /'intanet/ 47 internet access /'intenet ækses/ 55 into /'mtu:, 'mtə/ 59, 76, 77 invite /m'vart/ 64 Ireland /'aıələnd/ 4 ironing /'aɪənɪŋ/ 39 irregular /i'regjələ(r)/ 6 irritating /'ırıteıtın/ 70 Italian /r'tæliən/ 4 Italy /'rtəli/ 4

jacket /'dzækit/ 18 jam /dzæm/ 26 Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 4 Japanese /dzæpə'niz/ 4 jar /d3ax(r)/ 26 jeans /dzi:nz/ 18 job /d3pb/ 8,42 journalism /'dʒ3:nəlızm/ 43 journalist /'dʒ3:nəlɪst/ 43 journey /'dʒ3:ni/ 30, 61, 79 juice as in orange juice /dzu:s/ 27 jump /dʒʌmp/ 11 jumper /'dʒʌmpə(r)/ 18 junction /'dʒʌŋk∫n/ 32 junk /dzank/ 47 just as in just keep going /dʒʌst/ 31 just a moment /'dʒʌst ə məʊmənt/ 69 just after /'dʒʌst ɑːftə(r)/ 2 just over /'dʒʌst əʊvə(r)/ 26, 35 just under /'dʒʌst ʌndə(r)/ 26, 35

keen as in keen on something /ki:n/ 48
keep (= put/store) /ki:p/ 46
keep going /ki:p 'gəoɪŋ/ 31
keyboard /'ki:bə:d/ 46
kilo /'ki:ləo/ 26
kilometres /kɪl'əmi:təz, kɪ'lomɪtəz/ 31, 34
kind adj /kaɪnd/ 14
kind as in that's very kind of you /kaɪnd/ 66
kind as in What kind...? /kaɪnd/ 52, 62
kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/ 38
knee /ni:/ 12
knife /naɪf/ 28

know /nəʊ/ 7, 31 know as in get to know /nəʊ/ 15 Korean /kəˈriːən/ 4

ladies /leidiz/ 33 lake /leik/ 36 lamb /læm/ 24 lamp /læmp/ 41 land /lænd/ 56 language /længwid3/ 4 lane /lem/ 32 laptop /'læptop/ 46 large /la:d3/ 19 last adj /last/ 30 last v /last/ 43 last night, last week, last year, etc. /losst 'nait, 'wi:k, 'jɪə(r)/ 75 last stop /la:st 'stop/ 29 late as in I get up late /lent/ 17 late as in Sorry I'm late /lett/ 67 late (fifties) /lent ('fiftiz)/ 13 later as in See you later /'leitə(r)/ 60, 75 laugh /lasf/ 14 law /lo:/ 43 lawyer /'lɔːjə(r)/ 43 lazy /'leizi/ 14 lead v /li:d/ 49 lead singer /lixd 'smə(r)/ 51 league /li:q/ 49 leave as in I'll leave it/them /lix/ 19 leave v (of a train) /lix/ 30, 42 leave home /lixy 'haom/ 17 leave school /li:v 'sku:l/ 42 left /left/ 31 leg /leg/ 12, 22 lemon /'lemon/ 25 lend /lend/ 63 length as in medium-length /leηθ/ 13 lesson /'lesn/ 42 let as in let me /let/ 66 let's /lets/ 65 letter /'letə(r)/ 59 letter box /'letə boks/ 59 lettuce /'letis/ 25 level /'levl/ 9 library /'laɪbrəri/ 43 lie /laɪ/ 57 lie down /lar 'daon/ 11, 22, 73 lift n /lift/ 38 lift as in give someone a lift /lift/ 66 light adj /lart/ 13.18 light n /lart/ 41 lightning /'laitnin/ 21 like v /laɪk/ 48 like as in What's he/she/it like? /laɪk/ 14, 23, 62 like as in would like /lark/ 26, 27, 28, 55, 64

limit as in speed limit /'limit/ 32 mark /ma:k/ 42 line /lam/ 68 market /'ma:kit/ 35, 37 lip /lip/ 12 married /'mærid/ 8 listen to /'lisn tə/ 50, 53 married as in get married /mærid/ 10, 15 literature /'litrat[a(r)/ 42 match n = game / mæt / 49litre /'li:tə(r)/ 26 matches n = to start a fire / mæt [rz] 26little /'lttl/ 19 maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 42 little as in a little /'lttl/ 71 matter as in it doesn't matter /'mætə(r)/ 67 living room /'livin ru:m/ 38 matter as in What's the matter? location /lou'ker[n/ 35 $\frac{\text{''mætə(r)}}{16.22}$ lonely /'lounli/ 36 maybe /'meɪbi/ 65 long adj /lon/ 13, 19 meal /mi:1/ 28, 64 long as in How long...? /lon/ 29, 62 mean /mi:n/ 7 long as in a metre long /lon/ 29 meaning /'mi:nin/ 7 long hours /lon 'avoz/ 45 meat /mi:t/ 24 look /lok/ 19 media /'mi:diə/ 53 look after /lok 'a:ftə/ 36 medicine (= subject of study) / medsn/ 43 look round /lok 'raund/ 58 medicine (e.g. aspirin) / medsn, medisin/ 23 look something up /lok samθin 'ap/ 73 medium (= size) /'mi:diam/ 19 loose /lu:s/ 19 medium (= steak) /'mi:diəm/ 28 lorry driver /'lpri draivə(r)/ 44 medium-length /'mi:diam lenθ/ 13 lose /lu:z/ 49, 67 medium-sized /'mi:diam saizd/ 35 lot as in a lot, a lot of /lot/ 21 meet (= come together) /mixt/ 45 lots as in lots to do /lots/ 35 meet (= for the first time) /mixt/ 15, 60 lottery /'Iptari/ 20 meet as in nice/good to meet you /mixt/ 60 love /lav/ 48 meeting /'mixtm/ 45 love story /'lav sto:ri/ 52 melon /'melən/ 25 lovely /'lavli/ 19, 61 memory stick / memori stik/ 46 low as in low wages /lou/ 45 menu /'menju:/ 28 luck as in good luck /lnk/ 61 merry Christmas /meri 'krısməs/ 61 luggage /'lagid3/ 56 message / mesid3/47 message as in text message /'mesid3/ 69 lunch /lants/ 79 Mexican / meksikən/ 4 Mexico /'meksikəu/ 4 MA (Master of Arts) /em 'ei (master ev asts)/ 43 microwave /'markrawery/ 39 MP3 player /em pi: 'θri: pleiə(r)/ 47 midday /mid'dei/ 2 Mr /'mista(r)/ 9 middle /'midl/ 46 Mrs /'misiz/ 9 middle-aged /midl 'eid3d/ 13 Ms /maz/ 9 Middle East /midl 'i:st/ 4 MSc (Master of Science) midnight /'midnait/ 2 /em es 'si: (ma:stər əv 'saɪəns)/ 43 might /mart/ 54 machine as in cash machine /məˈʃiːn/ 59 mile /mail/ 35 machine as in washing machine /məˈʃiːn/ 39 miles an hour /mailz on 'avo(r)/ 32 mad /mæd/ 70 milk /milk/ 26, 27 magazine /mægə'zi:n/ 53 million / milian/ 1 main course /'mem ko:s/ 28 mind as in Do you mind if...? /maind/ 63 main road /mein 'roud/ 32 mind as in never mind /maind/ 55, 67 major /'meidʒə(r)/ 34 mineral water /'minərəl wo:tə(r)/ 28 make (= perform an action) /merk/ 45 minibar /'miniba:(r)/ 55 make (= produce) /meik/ 39, 46 mirror /'mirə(r)/ 40 make-up /'merk Ap/ 40 miss v /mis/ 30 manager /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ 43 Miss /mis/ 9 Mandarin / mændərın/ 4 missing /'misin/ Starter mango /'mængəu/ 25 mistake /mi'sterk/ Starter many as in how many /'meni/ 26, 61 mixed salad /mikst 'sæləd/ 28 map /mæp/ 58 mobile number /'məobail nambə(r)/ 69 marital status /'mæritl steitəs/ 9

modern /'mpdn/ 35, 38 modern languages /mpdn 'længwid3iz/ 42 moment as in at the moment /'maumant/ 69, 75 moment as in just a moment /'magmant/ 69 monitor /'monito(r)/ 46 month /manθ/ 3 more as in some more /mox(r)/ 28 morning /'mo:nin/ 2 morning as in good morning /'mɔ:nɪn/ 60 mosque /mpsk/ 35 most /məust/ 53 mother /'mʌðə(r)/ 10 mother tongue /maða 'tan/ 9 motorway /'mautawei/ 32 mountain / mauntan/ 34 mouse /maus/ 46 mouse mat /'maos mæt/ 46 moustache /məˈsta:f/ 13 mouth /maυθ/ 12 move /mu:v/ 46 movie /'mu:vi/ 52 much as in how much /mats/ 13, 26, 45, 59 much as in nothing much /matf/ 53 mum /m/m/ 10 museum /mju:'zi:əm/ 35, 58 mushroom /'ma[ru:m/ 25 music /'mju:zik/ 42,50 musical /'miu:zikl/ 50 mussels /'maslz/ 24 must /'məst/ 60

name as in family name, first name /neim/ 8 napkin /'næpkm/ 28 narrow /'nærəo/ 70 nationality /næʃəˈnælɪti/ 4 near /niə(r)/ 29, 76 nearest /'niprist/ 62 nearly /'nıəli/ 2 necessary /'nesəsəri/ 70 neck /nek/ 12 need /ni:d/ 19, 23, 66 neighbours /'neibəz/ 38 nephew /'nefju:/ 10 nervous /'naives/ 16 net /net/ 49 never /'nevə(r)/ 17 never mind / nevə maind/ 55, 67 New Year /nju: 'jiə(r)/ 61 New Year's Day /nju: jiəz 'dei/ 3 news /nju:z/ 53 newsagent's /'nju:zeid3ənts/ 37 newspaper /'nju:speipə(r)/ 53 next (of a train) /nekst/ 30 next stop /'nekst stop/ 29 next to /'nekst tu:, tə/ 76 next week /nekst 'wi:k/ 75

nice /nais/ 14, 19, 79 nice as in have a nice day/evening /nais/ 61 nice to meet you /nais to 'mi:t ju:/ 60 niece /ni:s/ 10 night (= saying goodnight) /nart/ 60 night as in a night /naɪt/ 2 night as in €60 a night /nart/ 55 night as in last night /nart/ 75 nightlife /'nartlarf/ 35 nil /nɪl/ 49 no entry /nou 'entri/ 33 no exit /noo 'eksit/ 33 no parking /nəʊ 'paːkɪŋ/ 33 no problem /nao 'problam/ 63 no smoking /nəʊ 'sməʊkɪn/ 33 noisy /'nɔɪzi/ 70 none /nan/ 53 noodles /'nu:dlz/ 26 normally /'no:məli/ 17 north /no:0/ 34, 35 North America /no:0 ə'merikə/ 4 north-east /no:θ 'i:st/ 35 north-west /no:0 'west/ 35 Northern Ireland /no:ðən 'aɪələnd/ 4 nose /nəuz/ 12 not bad /not 'bæd/ 60 notebook /'noutbok/ 5 notes /nouts/ 20, 56 nothing as in there's nothing to do $\frac{\ln \theta \ln}{35}$ nothing much /nλθιη 'mʌtʃ/ 53 nothing to declare /nΛθιη to dr'kleo(r)/ 33 noticeboard /'noutisboid/ 5 noun /naun/ 6 number as in phone number /'nambo(r)/ 69 number as in PIN number /'nambo(r)/ 20 number as in wrong number /'nambə(r)/ 69 number 1 (in the singles chart) /nambə 'wan/ 51 nurse /nais/ 44 nursery school /'na:səri sku:l/ 42

occasionally /ə'keɪʒ(ə)nəli/ 17 occupation /pkju'per[n/ 9 o'clock (of time) /ə'klpk/ 2 o'clock (of a train) /ə'klpk/ 30 odd /pd/ 70 of course /əv 'kə:s/ 28, 63 offer /'pfa(r)/ 66 office as in post office /'pfis/ 59 office as in ticket office /'pfis/ 30 officer as in police officer /'pfisə(r)/ 44 often /'pfn, pftən/ 17 often as in how often /'pfn, 'pftən/ 62 oil /oil/ 28 old /auld/ 8, 10 olive oil /pliv 'oil/ 26 olives /'plivz/ 26

on (= preposition of place) 76h/ 76	packet / pækit/ 26
on (= preposition of time) $/pn/74$	pain /pein/ 22
on a river /pn ə 'rɪvə(r)/ 35	pair /peə(r)/ 18
on holiday /pn 'holədei, -di/ 54	palace /'pælis/ 35
on my own /on mai 'oun/ 14	pale /peil/ 18
on the coast /on ðə 'kəust/ 34, 35	pan as in frying pan /pæn/ 39
on the first floor /on do fast 'flo:(r)/ 38	paper (= newspaper) /'peipə(r)/ 53
on the internet /on or: 'intenet/ 47	paper as in piece of paper /'peipo(r)/ 5
on the phone /pn ðə 'fəun/ 69	paper shop /'perpə fop/ 37
on time /on 'taim/ 56	parcel /'pa:sl/ 59
on TV/on the radio	parents /'pearants/ 10
/pn ti: 'vi:, pn ðə 'reɪdiəu/ 53	park n /pa:k/ 35
on as in What's on? /on/ 52	park v /pa:k/ 38
once /wʌns/ 17	park as in car park /pa:k/ 32
onion /'Anjən/ 25	parking /'pa:kin/ 38, 55
online /on'lain, 'onlain / 20, 47	part-time adj /'po:t taɪm/ 45
only adj /'aonli/ 70	participle as in past participle
only adv /'əonli/ 71	/pa:'tisipl, 'pa:tisipl / 6
open /'aupan/ 11, 46, 62	particularly /pəˈtɪkjələli/ 71
opera singer /'oprə siŋə(r)/ 51	partner /'pa:tnə(r)/ 15
opinion /əˈpɪnjən/ 35, 53, 68	party /'pa:ti/ 64
opposite n /'ppəzit/ Starter, 7	pass an exam /pa:s ən ıg'zæm/ 42
opposite prep /'ppəzɪt/ 31, 76	passenger /'pæsmdʒə(r)/ 30, 56
opposites as in complete opposites /'opposites/ 14	passport /'pa:spo:t/ 54
or so as in for an hour or so /ɔ: 'səʊ/ 57	passport control /passport kən'trəol/ 56
orange adj /'orindʒ/ 18	past /pa:st/ 76
orange n /'prind3/ 25	past as in five past six /pa:st/ 2
orange juice / ormd3 d3u:s/ 27	past participle /pa:st pa:'tisipl, pa:st 'pa:tisipl/ 6
orchestra /ˈɔːkɪstrə/ 51	pasta /'pæstə/ 26
order /'bidə(r)/ 27, 28	paste /peist/ 46
order as in in order to /'ɔ:də(r)/ 77	path /pa:θ/ 36
order as in out of order /'ɔːdə(r)/ 29	pavement /'pervment/ 32
organize /ˈɔːgənaɪz/ 45	pay /pei/ 19
organized /ˈɔːgənaɪzd/ 14	PE (physical education) /pi: 'i: (fizikl
other as in each other /'Aðə(r)/ 15	edzu'keı∫n)/ 42
out of /'aut əv/ 76	peace /pi:s/ 53
out of order /aot əv 'əːdə(r)/ 33	peach /pi:tʃ/ 25
outdoors /aut'do:z/ 37	pear /peə(r)/ 25
outside adv /aot'said/ 38	peas /pizz/ 25
outside prep /'autsaid/ 29	pedestrian crossing /padestrian 'krosin/ 32
oven /'Avn/ 39	pen /pen/ 5
over (= above/higher than something)	pen as in board pen /pen/ 5
/'əʊvə(r)/ 76	pencil /'pensl/ 5
over (= more than a number, price, etc.)	pencil sharpener /'pensl sa:pno(r)/ 5
/ˈəʊvə(r)/ 26, 35	pepper (= spice) /'pepə(r)/ 28
overtake /əʊvəˈteɪk/ 32	pepper (= vegetable) /'pepə(r)/ 25
overweight /əovə'weit/ 13	per cent /pa 'sent/ 59
own v /əon/ 36	perfect /'ps:fikt/ 57
own as in on my own /oun/ 14	perform /pəˈfɔ:m/ 51
	perfume /ˈpɜːfjuːm/ 40
PC (personal computer)	perhaps /pəˈhæps/ 54, 65
/piː 'siː (pɜːsənl kəm'pju:tə)/ 46	person /'ps:sn/ 13
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)	personally /'ps:sənəli/ 68
/pi: ent / 'di: (doktər əv fi'losəfi)/ 43	petrol station /'petrol stersn/ 32
p.m. /pir 'em/ 2	pharmacy /ˈfɑːməsi/ 22
pack /pæk/ 54	phone n, v /faun/ 69

phone call /'foon ko:l/ 45 potato /po'tertou/ 25 phone number /'foon nambo(r)/ 69 prawns /pro:nz/ 24 phone someone back /foon samwan 'bæk/ 69 prefer /pri'fs:(r)/ 37, 48, 65, 68 photos /'fəotəoz/ 58 preposition /prepə'zɪʃn/ 6 phrase /freiz/ 6 price /prais/ 20, 55 physics /'fiziks/ 42 primary school /'praiməri sku:l/ 42 pianist /'pianist/ 51 print /print/ 46 piano /pi'ænəu/ 51 print something out /print samθin 'aot/ 46 pick up /pik 'Ap/ 11 printer /'printə(r)/ 46 picture /'pikt[ə(r)/ 41 printout /'printaut/ 46 piece /pi:s/ 5, 26, 41 private school /'praivet sku:l/ 42 pig /pig/ 24 problem as in no problem /'problem/ 63 pilot /'parlət/ 44 programme /'prougræm/ 53 PIN (personal identification number) pronoun /'praonaon/ 6 /pin (ps:sənl aidentifi'kei[n nambə]/ 20 pronounce /prə'naons/ 7 pineapple /'pamæpl/ 25 psychologist /sar'kpladzist/ 43 pink /pink/ 18 psychology /sar'kpladai/ 43 pitch /pits/ 49 public transport /pablik 'trænsport/ 36 place /pleis/ 35, 49 puck /pak/ 49 places as in change places /'pleisiz/ 63 pull /pol/ 11 plane /plein/ 56 pupil / pju:pl/ 42 plaster /'plasstə(r)/ 23 purple / ps:pl/ 18 plate /plent/ 28 push /pos/ 11 platform /'plætform/ 30 put (= place) /put/ 59 play /plei/ 17, 50 put in /pot 'm/ 20 player as in cassette player, CD player put something away /put samθin ə'wei/ 39 /'pleia(r)/ 5 put something down /put samθin 'daon/ 11 player as in DVD player /'pleio(r)/ 41 put something on /put samθin 'pn/ 40, 73 player as in MP3 player /'pleio(r)/ 47 pleasant /'plez(ə)nt/ 14, 21 quarter (past/to) /'kwo:to (pa:st/tu:)/ 2 please /pli:z/ 26, 27, 59, 63, 66, 69 gueue /kju:/ 37 please do not disturb /pli:z du: not di'sta:b/ 33 queue here /kju: 'hiə(r)/ 29 plural noun /pluerel 'naun/ 6 quick /kwik/ 47 points /points/ 49 quiet (= about a person) /'kwarət/ 14 Poland /'pauland/ 4 quiet (= not busy) /'kwarət/ 32, 35 police officer /pə'li:s pfisə(r)/ 44 quiet (= not noisy) /'kwarət/ 70 Polish /'paulif/ 4 quite /kwart/ 48, 71 polite /po'lart/ 67 politician /polo'tisn/ 43 racket /'rækit/ 49 politics /'polatiks/ 43 radiator /'reidieitə(r)/ 41 polluted /pa'lu:tid/ 35 radio /'reidiau/ 53 poor poo(r)/70railway station /'reilwei steifn/ 31 popular /'popiala(r)/ 34, 50 rain n, v /rein/ 21 population /popje'leisn/ 35 raincoat /'remkoot/ 18 pork /po:k/ 24 rare /reə(r)/ 28 Portugal /'po:tfogl/ 4 rarely /'reəli/ 17 Portuguese /po:tsu'gi:z/ 4 raw /ro:/ 25 possible /'posabl/ 70 razor /'reizə(r)/ 40 possibly /'posabli/ 63 RE (religious education) post v /poust/ 59 /air 'i: (rilidges edgu'keifn) 42 post office /'paust pfis/ 59 read /ri:d/ 50 postbox /'paustboks/ 59 ready /'redi/ 28 postcard /'pəostka:d/ 59 really /'ri:əli/ 14, 48, 67, 71 postcode /'paustkaud/ 8, 59 receipt /ri'si:t/ 20 postman /'paustman/ 59 receive /rɪ'si:v/ 47 postwoman /'paustwoman/ 59 reclaim as in baggage reclaim /'ri:kleim/ 56

recommend /rekə'mend/ 55, 62 sad /sæd/ 16 red /red/ 18. safe /seif/ 35 refuse /ri'fiu:z/ 66 salad as in mixed salad /'sæləd/ 28 regular /'regiplo(r)/ 6 salary /'sæləri/ 45 relationship /ri'lei[n[ip/ 15] sale /seil/ 33 relative /'relativ/ 10 salmon /'sæmən/ 24 relax /ri'læks/ 57 salt /so:lt, splt/ 28 relaxed /rt'lækst/ 14 same /seim/ Starter remember /ri'membə(r)/ 7,67 same as in the same to you /serm/ 61 rent /rent/ 57 sandals /'sændlz/ 18 repair /ri'peə(r)/ 50 sandwich /'sænwitf, 'sænwidz/ 27 reply /ri'plai/ 47 satellite TV /sætəlait ti: 'vi:/ 55 report n /ri'poit/ 45 sauce /so:s/ 28 report v /ri'po:t/ 53 saucepan /'səxspæn/ 39 reporter /ri'poxtə(r)/ 43, 53 saucer /'so:sə(r)/ 39 research /ri'ss:tf, 'ri:ss:tf/ 43 Saudi /'saudi/ 4 reserve /ri'za:v/ 30 Saudi Arabia /saudi əˈreɪbiə/ 4 resort /ri'zo:t/ 57 sausages /'spsədaiz/ 24 rest as in have a rest /rest/ 79 save (= not waste) /serv/ 20 results /ri'zalts/ 42 save (= store) /seiv/ 46 retired /ri'taiəd/ 44 say /sei/ 7 return /rr't3:n/ 30 scales /skeilz/ 56, 59 review /rɪ'vju:/ 52 scared /skead/ 16 rice /rais/ 26 scarf /skg:f/ 18 rich /rits/ 70 school /sku:l/ 42 ride /raid/ 11, 36 score n. v /sko:(r)/ 49 right (= correct) /rait/ 7 Scotland /'skptland/ 4 right (= not left) /rant/ 31 screen /skri:n/ 46 right (= OK) / rant / 55sea /si:/ 57 ring v (of a bell) /rin/ 29 seafood /'si:fu:d/ 24 ring v = phone / rm / 69search engine /'saxtf end3m/ 47 ring someone back /rm samwan 'bæk/ 69 season /'sizn/ 3 rink /rmk/ 49 seat /sixt/ 27, 30 ripe /raip/ 26 seat belt /'sixt belt/ 56 river /'rivə(r)/ 34 secondary school /'sekəndri sku:l/ 42 road as in main road /roud/ 32 secretary /'sekrət(ə)ri/ 44 road sign /'rəud sam/ 32 see (= meet or visit) /siz/ 15, 60 roast /roust/ 28 see (= watch) /si:/ 17, 52, 53 roll /raul/ 27 See you later /si: ju: 'leitə(r)/ 60, 75 romantic /rəo'mæntik/ 52 self-employed /self im'ploid/ 44 room service /'ru:m sa:vis/ 55 sell /sel/ 20 roundabout /'raundabaut/ 32 send /send/ 45, 47, 59, 69 route /ruxt/ 29 serious /'siəriəs/ 14 rubber /'rabə(r)/ 5 service as in room service /'ssivis/ 55 rubbish /'rabif/ 38 set /set/ 49 shake hands /feik 'hændz/ 60 rubbish bin /'rabif bin/ 39 rude /ru:d/ 67 shall I? (= offer) /'sæl ai, səl 'ai/ 66 rug /rag/ 41 shall we? (= suggestion) /'sæl wi:, səl 'wi:/ 65 rugby /'raqbi/ 49 shame /seim/ 55 ruler /'ru:lə(r)/ 5 shampoo /sem'pu:/ 40 run $n / r_{\Lambda} n / 79$ share /sea(r)/ 14 run v /rʌn/ 11, 29 sharpener as in pencil sharpener /'fa:pnə(r)/ 5 rush hour /'raf avə(r)/ 32 shave /fery/ 40 Russia /'rafə/ 4 sheep /fi:p/ 24 Russian /'rasn/ 4 sheet /fixt/ 40 shelf /[elf/ 39

shirt /sat/ 18 something /'sam θ in/ 23 shoe /ʃu:/ 18 sometimes /'samtaimz/ 17 shooting /'fu:tin/ 50 son /san/ 10 shop /fpp/ 37 song /spn/ 50 shop assistant /'fpp əsistənt/ 19,44 soon /su:n/ 60, 75 shopping as in do the shopping sore /sox(r)/ 22 /'spm/ 17, 37, 39 sorry /'spri/ 63, 64, 67 shopping centre /'fopin sentə(r)/ 37 sounds /saundz/ 64 short /so:t/ 13, 19 soup /su:p/ 28 shorts /sorts/ 57 south /savθ/ 34, 35 should /fod/ 22, 58 South Korea /sauθ kəˈriːə/ 4 shoulder /'səoldə(r)/ 12 south-east /sauθ 'i:st/ 35 shower *n* (in the bathroom) /' $\int av_{\theta}(r)/17, 40, 55$ south-west /sauθ 'west/ 35 shower $n = rain / \frac{av_0(r)}{21}$ sov sauce /sor 'sors/ 28 shut /[At/ 11, 62 Spain /spein/ 4 shy /sai/ 14 Spanish /'spænis/ 4 sick /sik/ 22 sparkling /'spa:klm/ 28 sightseeing /'saitsi:in/ 58 speak /spi:k/ 69 sign v /sam/ 59 speaker /'spi:kə(r)/ 46 sign as in road sign /sam/ 32 speaking /'spi:kin/ 69 signature /'signətʃə(r)/ 9 speed camera /'spixd kæm(ə)rə/ 32 since /sins/ 75 speed limit /'spixd limit/ 32 sing /sin/ 50 spell /spel/ 7 singer $/\sin\varphi(r)/50,51$ spend (money) /spend ('mani)/ 20 single n = song / singl / 51spend (time) /spend ('tam)/ 10, 45, 50 single n = ticket / singl / 30split up /split 'Ap/ 15 single adj (= for one) /'singl/ 40,55spoon /spu:n/ 28 single adj (= not married) /'singl/ 8 sporty /'sporti/ 14 singles chart /'singlz tfa:t/ 51 spring /sprin/ 3 singular noun /singjələ 'naon/ 6 square /skweə(r)/ 35 sink /sink/ 39 squid /skwid/ 24 sister /'sisto(r)/ 10 staff /sta:f/ 55 sister-in-law /'sister in lo:/ 10 stairs /steəz/ 38 sit down /sit 'daon/ 11, 73 stalls /sto:lz/ 37 size /saiz/ 19, 35 stamp /stæmp/ 59 skiing /'ski:m/ 50 stand up /stænd 'Ap/ 11,73 skirt /skart/ 18 star /sta:(r)/ 52 sky /skai/ 36 start /start/ 42 sleep /sli:p/ 17,61 starter /'sta:to(r)/ 28 slim /slim/ 13 state school /'stert sku:l/ 42 slow /slou/ 30, 47 station as in petrol station /'sterfn/ 32 small /smo:l/ 19 station as in railway station /'sterfn/ 31 smart /smart/ 19 statue /'stætsu:/ 35 smoking as in no smoking /'smookin/ 33 status as in marital status /'stertəs/ 9 snow n, v /snou/ 21 stay (= live for a short period) v. n / stei / 55so /sau/ 77 stay at school /ster at 'sku:l/ 42 so as in an hour or so /səu/ 57 stay in bed /ster in 'bed/ 22 soap /soup/ 40 steak /steik/ 28 soap (= soap opera) /soup/ 53 steps /steps/ 38 sociable /'səu[əb]/ 14 stick /stik/ 49 sock /spk/ 18 stick as in memory stick /stik/ 46 sofa /'səufə/ 41 still adj /stil/ 28 software engineer /'softwear endʒmia(r)/ 43 still adv /stil/ 71 soldier /'səʊldʒə(r)/ 44 stomach /'stamak/ 12 some /sam, sam/ 53 stomach-ache /'stamak eik/ 22 some more /səm 'məx(r)/ 28 stop as in bus stop, last stop /stpp/ 29

store as in department store /sto:(r)/ 37 taxi driver /'tæksi draivə(r)/ 44 storm /sto:m/ 21 tea /ti:/ 27 story as in love story /'sto:ri/ 52 teacher /'ti:t[ə(r)/ 44 straight adj /streit/ 13 team /ti:m/ 49 straight as in straight on /strent/ 31 technology as in design and technology strange /stremd3/ 70 /tek'npladzi/ 42 strawberry /'stro:b(ə)ri/ 25 technology as in IT, ICT /tek'nplad3i/ 42 strong /stron/ 70 teenager /'ti:neidzə(r)/ 13 study /'stadi/ 38 teens /ti:nz/ 13 studies as in business studies /'stʌdiz/ 43 teeth /ti:θ/ 17, 40 stupid /'stju:pid/ 14 television /'telrvi3n, telr'vi3n / 41 subject /'sabd3ikt/ 42 temperature /'temprətfə(r)/ 22 sugar /'fogə(r)/ 26 temple /'templ/ 35 suggestion /sə'dzest[n/ 65 tennis /'tenis/ 17,49 suit /su:t/ 18 tennis as in table tennis /'tenis/ 50 suitcase /'su:(t)keis/ 54, 56 term /t3:m/ 43 summer /'samə(r)/ 3 terminal /'ta:mml/ 56 sun /san/ 21 terrible /'terabl/ 36, 42, 79 sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ 57 text v, n /tekst/ 69 sunglasses /'sanglassiz/ 18 Thai /tai/ 4 sunny /'sʌni/ 21 Thailand /'tailænd/ 4 sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ 21 thank you /'θæŋk ju:/ 66 supermarket /'su:pəma:kit/ 37 thanks /0ænks/ 26, 31, 60, 61, 66 sure adj /ʃoə(r)/ 7, 65, 68 that's all /ðæts 'o:1/ 26 sure adv /[və(r)/ 28, 63 the news /ðə 'nju:z/ 53 surname /'sameim/ 9 the same to you /ðə seim tə 'ju:/ 61 surprised /sə'praizd/ 16 then /ðen/ 78 sweater /'swetə(r)/ 18 then as in See you then /ðen/ 60 sweet /swi:t/ 25 thin $\theta_{\rm in}/13$ swim n / swim / 79think $\theta_{ink}/48,68$ Swiss /swis/ 4 third $/\theta 3:d/3$ Switzerland /'switsələnd/ 4 thirsty /'03:sti/ 16 this evening, this weekend, etc. TV /ti: 'vi:/ 41, 53 /ðis 'irvnin, ðis wirk'end/ 75 table (= furniture) /'terbl/ 5 this is (used when introducing someone) /'dis iz/ 60 table (= list of facts/words) /'teibl/ Starter, 49 this is (used on the phone) /'ðɪs ɪz/ 69 table tennis /'teibl tenis/ 50 thousand /'θaυzənd/ 1 tablet /'tæblət/ 23 thriller $\frac{\theta}{\theta}$ 119(r)/52 take (= buy) /teik/ 19 throat /0raut/ 22 take (= carry) /teik/ 63 through /0ru:/ 76 take (= have a certain size) /teik/ 19 thumb /0_{Am}/ 12 take (= use a form of transport) /teik/ 30, 32, 57 thunder /'0Ando(r)/ 21 take (a tablet/medicine) /teik/ 23 tick /tik/ Starter, 9 take an exam /teik ən ig'zæm/ 42 ticket /'tıkıt/ 30, 56 take away /teik ə'wei/ 27 take off (= leave the ground) ticket office /'tikit pfis/ 30 tidy /'tardi/ 14 /teik 'pf, 'teik pf / 56, 73 tie /tai/ 18 take off (= remove) /teik 'pf/ 40, 73 take out, take something out tight /tart/ 19 tights /tarts/ 18 /terk 'aut, terk samθin 'aut/ 39 time /tarm/ 2,61 take photos /teik 'foutouz/ 58 time as in half-time /tam/ 49 take the first turning /teik ðə fɜːst 'tɜːnɪŋ/ 31 time as in have a nice time /taim/ 79 tall /to:l/ 13 tap /tæp/ 39 time as in in (ten days') time /tarm/ 75 timetable /'taimteibl/ 29, 30 tart /taxt/ 28 tin /tin/ 25, 26 taste /teist/ 25

tired /'tarad/ 16 tissue /'tɪʃuː/ 23, 40 toasted sandwich /təostid 'sænwitf, 'sænwid3/ 27 toe /tau/ 12 together /tə'qeðə(r)/ 10, 15 toilet /'toilet/ 33, 40 tomato /tə'ma:təu/ 25 tomorrow /tə'mprəu/ 75 tongue as in mother tongue /tʌn/ 9 too (= also) /tu:/ 61,77 too (= more than is good) /tu:/ 19 tooth /tu:0/ 12 toothache /'tu:0eik/ 22 toothbrush /'tu:θbras/ 40 toothpaste /'tu:0peist/ 40 top (= clothes) / top / 18top (= highest part) /tpp/ 38, 49 touch /tatf/ 11 tour /tuo(r)/ 58 tourist /'toorist/ 55 towel /'taual/ 40 town /taun/ 35 town centre /taun 'sentə(r)/ 38 traffic /'træfik/ 32 traffic jam /'træfik dæm/ 32 traffic light /'træfik lait/ 32 train /trein/ 30 train driver /'trein draivə(r)/ 44 trainers /'treməz/ 18 transport as in public transport /'transport/ 36 travel insurance /'trævl insurans/ 54 traveller's cheque /trævələz 'tʃek/ 59 travelling /'trævəlin/ 50 tree /tri:/ 36 tree as in family tree /tri:/ 10 trolley /'troli/ 37, 56 trousers /'traozəz/ 18 true /tru:/ Starter try /trai/ 23 try on /'trai on/ 19,73 T-shirt /'ti: [3:t/ 18 tuna /'tju:nə/ 24 Turkey /'ta:ki/ 4 Turkish /'ta:k1 / 4 turn something off /ts:n samθin 'pf/ 39 turn something on /t3:n sam θ in 'pn/ 11, 39, 73 turning /'ta:nin/ 31 twice /twais/ 17 twin room /'twin ru:m/ 55 type /taip/ 45 typical /'tɪpɪkl/ 58

UK (United Kingdom) /ju: 'keɪ/ 4 USA (United States of America) /ju: es 'eɪ/ 4 ugly /'ʌqli/ 13

umbrella /m'brelə/ 18 unable /An'eibl/ 51 uncle /'Ankl/ 10 uncomfortable /An'kAmf(ə)təbl/ 19 under (= less than) $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$ 26. 35 under (= position) / 'Andə(r)/ 76 undergraduate /Andə'qrædzuət/ 43 underline /Andə'laın/ Starter unemployed /Anim'ploid/ 44 unfortunately /an'fort[ənətli/ 43 unfriendly /An'frendli/ 14 unhappy /An'hæpi/ 16 uniform /'ju:nifo:m/ 42 United Kingdom (UK) /junartid 'kindəm/ 4 United States of America (USA) /junartid sterts a v a'merika/ 4 university /ju:ni'va:səti/ 42 unnecessary /An'nesəsəri/ 70 untidy /n'taidi/ 14 until /nn'til/ 42, 75 unusual /An'ju:3uəl/ 70 up /Ap/ 76 upset /Ap'set/ 16 upstairs /Ap'steaz/ 38 use /ju:z/ 40, 47 useful /'juxsfl/ 70 useless /'ju:sləs/ 70 usually /ˈjuːʒuəli/ 17 utility room /ju:'tıləti ru:m/ 38

vacancies as in no vacancies /'veɪkənsiz/ 33 valley /'væli/ 36 various /'veəriəs/ 50 verb /vsib/ 6 very /'veri/ 19, 48, 60, 66 vet /vet/ 44 views /vju:z/ 38 village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ 35 vinegar /'vɪnɪgə(r)/ 28 violent /'vaɪələnt/ 52 violin /vaɪə'lm/ 51 violinist /vaɪə'lmist/ 51 visa /'vi:zə/ 54 visit /'vizɪt/ 47, 58 volleyball /'vɒlibə:l/ 49

wages /'weidziz/ 45 waist /weist/ 12 wait /weit/ 30 wake up /weik 'np/ 73 Wales /weilz/ 4 walk n /wo:k/ 17, 57, 79 walk v /wo:k/ 6, 11 wall /wo:l/ 41 want /wont/ 64, 66 war /wo:(r)/ 53

war film /'wo: film/ 52
wardrobe /'wa:draob/ 40
wash $n / wo / 40,79$
wash v /wps/ 40
washbasin /'wpfbeisn/ 40
washing machine /'wpfm məfim/ 39
washing-up /wp/iŋ 'Ap/ 39
waste /weist/ 68
watch n /wot 1/ 18
watch v /wpt // 50, 53
water as in mineral water /'wo:to(r)/ 28
wavy /'wervi/ 13
way /wei/ 31, 70
way in /wei 'm/ 33
way out /wei 'aut/ 33
weak /wi:k/ 70
wear /wea(r)/ 18,40
weather forecast /'weðə fɔ:ka:st/ 53
web address /'web adres/ 47
webcam /'webkæm/ 46
website /'websart/ 47
week /wi:k/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday / wirkder/ 17
weekend /wi:k'end/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weigh /wei/ 13
weight /weit/ 13
welcome /'welkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well as in as well /wel/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wei 'dʌn/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time)
/wel 'dan/ 28
well known /wel 'nəon/ 51
west /west/ 34, 35
wet /wet/ 21
what (used in questions) /wpt/ 21, 27
what about? /'wpt about/ 65
what's on? (= happening) /wpts 'pn/ 52
what's the metter? /wate \$6 'mate(s)/ 16 31
what's the matter? /wpts oo 'mætə(r)/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wen/ 62
when (= the time something happened)
/wen/ 78
where /wea(r)/ 62
where are you from? /weər ə ju: 'from/ 4
whereabouts /'wearabauts/ 8
which /wits/ 62
while /wail/ 78
while as in for a while /wail/ 22
white /wait/ 18, 27, 28
who /hu:/ 62
whose /hu:z/ 62
why /wai/ 62
wide /waid/ 70
wide /waith / U
wife /warf/ 10

win (= be best or first) /win/ 49 win (money) /win/ 20 wind /wind/ 21 window /'windəu/ 41 window seat /'window si:t/ 56 windy /'windi/ 21 wine /wain/ 28 winter /'wintə(r)/ 3 wonderful /'wandafl/ 36, 48 wood /wod/ 36 wool as in cotton wool /wol/ 23 word /wa:d/ 6 work n /ws:k/ 17 work v /w3:k/ 42, 45 worried /'warid/ 16 worry as in don't worry /wari/ 66 worst /waist/ 42 worth /w3:θ/ 62 wrist /rist/ 12 write /rait/ 43, 59 wrong (= causing problems) /rpn/ 62 wrong (= not right) /rpn/ Starter, 7, 19 wrong number /rpn 'namba(r)/ 69

year /jiə(r)/ 3, 45 yellow /'jeləu/ 18 yes, please /'jes pli:z, jes 'pli:z/ 27, 66 yesterday /'jestədei/ 75 you too /ju: 'tu:/ 61 young /jʌŋ/ 13

zero /'ziərəu/ 69

Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

Basic: for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills



